

# PLACE NAMES

IN THE CAPE PROVINCE

*By*

**COLIN GRAHAM BOTHA**

(CHIEF ARCHIVIST FOR THE UNION)

*Foreign Member of the "Maatschappij der Nederlândsche Letterkunde te Leiden"; Hon. Corresponding Member, Royal Historical Society, London.*



**JUTA & CO., LTD.**

**CAPE TOWN**

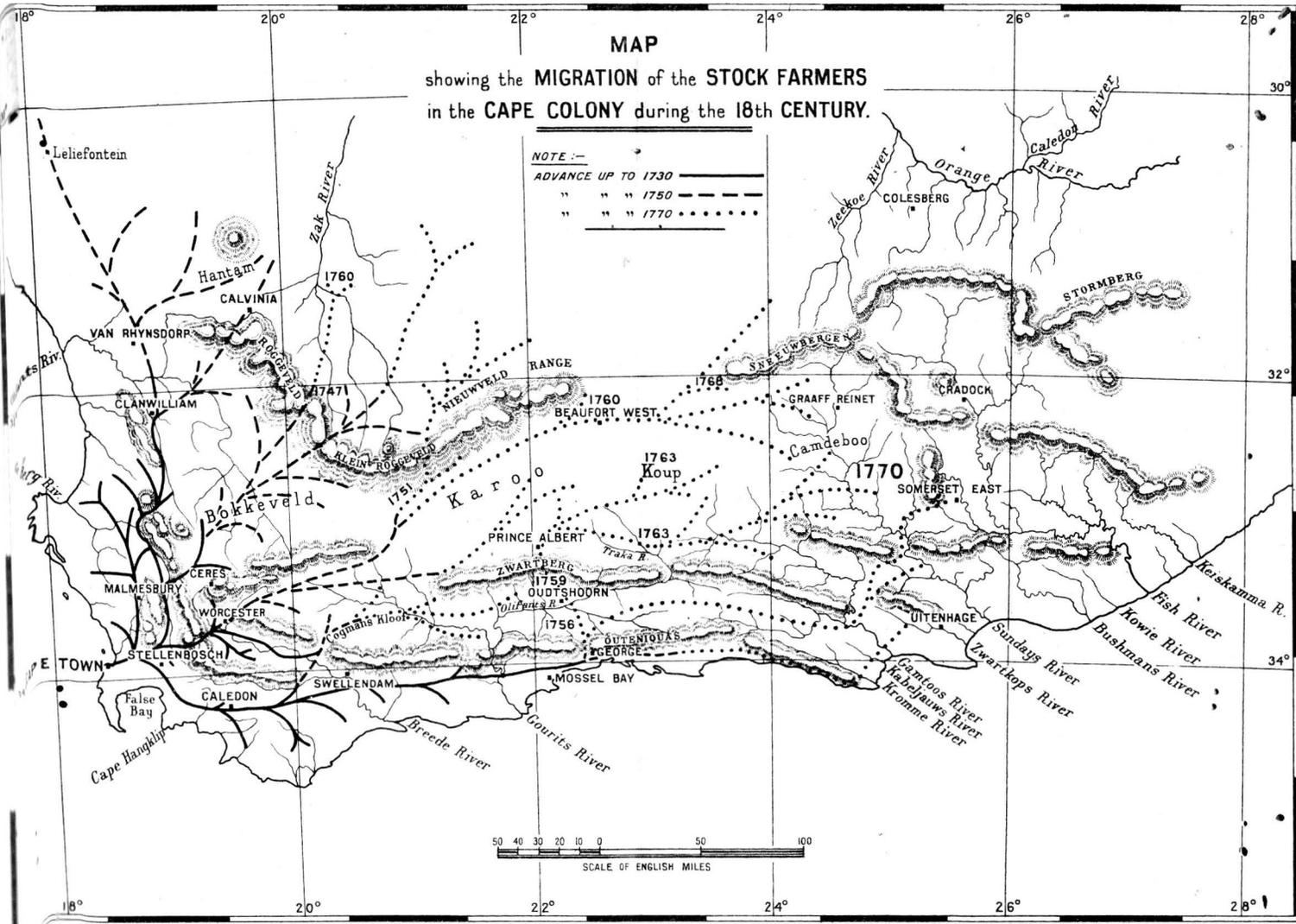
**JOHANNESBURG**

# MAP

showing the **MIGRATION** of the **STOCK FARMERS**  
in the **CAPE COLONY** during the **18th CENTURY**.

NOTE :-

ADVANCE UP TO 1730 —————  
 " " " 1750 - - - - -  
 " " " 1770 . . . . .



## PREFACE.

This book has been compiled to stimulate an interest in the subject of "Place Names" and arouse those who read it to study the origin and history of the names in their own district or locality. The study of place names will therefore, I hope, give a deeper knowledge of South African history and geography and may prompt others to publish material regarding their own locality. I have only touched the fringe of the subject as far as the Cape Province, formerly the old Cape Colony, is concerned giving special attention to the period before the 19th century. To tabulate and give an historical account of every town, village and physical feature of the province would entail much research and require a thorough knowledge of each district, and the native languages. Such an undertaking would be best achieved by several workers. Those who feel competent to take up the study of names in their own district or locality should be encouraged, so that the public may receive the benefit of their knowledge. This will then form the basis of the information for those who undertake the larger work.

About nine years ago I issued a booklet on "Place Names in the Cape District." The reception it received and the constant demand for copies, which have been long out of print, indicates that there is room for an extension of such a study. I was therefore persuaded that no better area could be chosen than the Cape Province around which the early history of this country is woven. The result of my work is represented in this slight contribution to the fascinating study of place names. The examples I have given will disclose how wide the field of research is and that the treasure house for material has not been entirely ransacked. This will be evident to those who know their own district more intimately than I do.

Some readers may be disappointed because this or that name has not been included. I trust the above remarks

will indicate to them that to tabulate every name requires long and careful research and could best be done by several workers. Therefore, I welcome any information and suggestions which may be used at some future date. If my work stimulates others to take up the study and results in the publication of the fruits of their labour then I shall be satisfied that my own effort has not been in vain. I am aware of the shortcomings of the present book but feel that it would be selfish to withhold the information which I have acquired from a variety of sources.

I would like to express here my feelings about the retention of original place names. There seems to be a tendency now and again to change and translate from one language to another original place names. This is particularly noticeable in farm names. It is granted that when a new Post Office or Railway Station is established there is nothing so confusing as to have two names alike. But it is to the change of long-established names that I particularly refer. Many of these have a history attached to them, or are so called on account of an event which occurred there or because of the nature of the surroundings. Take a name like Hout Bay. Many ask to-day why Hout Bay (Wood Bay)? Where are the forests? It was a name given in the days of van Riebeeck because of the forests of fine trees which grew along the mountain slopes. But one day it might be suggested that the name be changed. Such a thing would be deplorable. Let us retain original names as far as possible. Let careful scrutiny be made and great care exercised by those who have to give a place name to-day so that the generations of the future will find no reason to alter it.

One difficulty which I have encountered in my work is with regard to the spelling of some names. If we lay down the rule that they should be spelt as they first appear in the records then we should have to make many changes which would also cause amusement. This is particularly noticeable in the records of native names in the 17th and 18th centuries. The same writer may spell them in the same document in three or four ways. Which one should be used? I think the one which has prevailed by long custom. The same applies to the spelling of many Dutch names. The earlier ones are recorded in an

archaic form of spelling. Like the native names we find some of the Dutch given in a variety of forms; a good example of this is found in the references to Rondebosch as given on page 82. In many instances I have written down the names as found in the Dutch records.

I have to acknowledge my thanks to the S.A. National Society and Senator Sir Charles Smith for-making it possible for me to have this book published.

C. GRAHAM BOTHA.

Cape Town.

## CONTENTS.

Preface.	Page. . . . . 8
List of the principal authorities consulted . . . . .	8

### PART I.

#### Before the settlement of the Dutch.

<i>Section.</i>		
I	Introduction .. .. .	13
II	The Portuguese period .. .. .	18
III	The Native period .. .. .	27

### PART II.

#### The days of the Dutch East India Company and Batavian Republic.

	I Explanation of terms .. .. .	39
	II The Dutch regime .. .. .	44
	III Farm names .. .. .	94

### PART III.

#### The English period after 1806.

	I Names from Colonial Governors and the Royal Family .. .. .	119
	II Names from British and Colonial Statesmen and Officials .. .. .	134
	III Names commemorating the army and navy; the German Legion .. .. .	139

### PART IV.

#### Miscellaneous.

	I Names connected with the church and missions	149
	II <i>Varia</i> .. .. .	157
	Appendix. List of names in several of the early journals of expeditions inland. .. .. .	164
	Index of persons and subjects .. .. .	170
	Index of Place Names .. .. .	173

Illustration showing migration of the stock farmer during 18th century .. .. .	54
--	----

**LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES CONSULTED.**

*Printed Books:—*

**BARROW, JOHN.**—"Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa;" in two volumes. Published in London, 1806.

**BOTHA, COLIN GRAHAM.**—"Early Cape Land Tenure;" South African Law Journal, 1919.

**BOTHA, COLIN GRAHAM.**—"The French Refugees at the Cape." Published at Cape Town, 1921 (Second Edition). On pages 117 to 124 will be found grants of farms made to the Refugees.

**COBY, SIR GEORGE E.**—"The Rise of South Africa." Volumes 1-3, published by Longman's, Green & Co., 1910-1919. Interesting details are given of the building and naming of the military forts in the Eastern Province.

**DU PLESSIS, PROFESSOR J., LITT.D., B.D.**—"A History of Christian Missions in South Africa." Published by Longmans, Green & Co., 1911. This authoritative work gives the names and history of many of the mission stations.

**HAHN, DR. THEOPHILUS.**—Tsumi-Goam. Published in London, 1882.

**INDEX OF GOVERNMENT PROCLAMATIONS AND NOTICES FROM 1803-1881.** Printed at Cape Town by Authority. The proclamations and notices to which the index refers will be found in the Government Gazette.

**KOLBE, PIETER.**—"Naaukeurige Beschryving van de Kaap de Goede Hoop," in two volumes. Published at Amsterdam in 1727. Kolbe arrived at the Cape in 1705 and from 1710 to 1713 was Secretary of the Stellenbosch District.

**MAP OF THE COLONY OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.** Published under the signature of the Surveyor-General of the Cape Colony in 1895.

**MAPS DIVISIONAL OF THE CAPE COLONY,** given out by the Surveyor-General's Department.

**MOLSBERGEN, DR. E. C. GODEE.**—"Reizen in Zuid Afrika," in three volumes. Published by the Linschoten Vereeniging, 's Gravenhage, 1916-1922. These volumes are invaluable to the student of place names, especially volumes I and II. They contain the journals of expeditions to the north-west and south-east of the Cape Colony kept in The Hague Archives. Many of these are to be found in original or as a copy in the Cape Archives.

**PETTMAN, REVEREND CHARLES.**—"Africanderisms." Published by Longmans, Green & Co., 1913.

**PETTMAN, REVEREND CHARLES.**—"South African Methodist Place Names." Published at Queenstown, 1923.

**RAVENSTEIN, E. G.**—"Journal of Vasco da Gama's Voyage to India, 1497." Hakluyt Society, 1898. A useful list of Place Names is given with the names on maps and modern names.

**RAVENSTEIN, E. G.**—"The voyages of Diogo Cão and Bartholomeu Dias, 1482-1488." Transactions of the Royal Geographical Society, 1900.

**SOUTH AFRICAN JOURNAL OF SCIENCE.** Volumes XVI, XVII and XIX.

**THEAL, DR. GEORGE MCCALL.**—"Abstract of the Debates and Resolutions of the Council of Policy at the Cape," from 1651 to 1687. Published at Cape Town in 1881.

**THEAL, DR. GEORGE MCCALL.**—"Belangryke Historische Dokumenten." Vols 1-2 published at Cape Town in 1896. Vol. 1. contains "Reis van Gouverneur Joachim van Plettenberg, 1778" and Vol. 2. "Reis van Vaandrig Bentler 1752." These are also given in Molsbergen's "Reizen in Zuid Afrika."

**THEAL DR. GEORGE MCCALL.**—"History of South Africa" in eight volumes, latest edition. Volumes 1-3 contain the history before 1795 and volumes 4-8 since 1795. The work of the late Dr. Theal is too well known to remark upon. Every student of South African history at the beginning of his enquiries should consult this history.

**THEAL, DR. GEORGE MCCALL.**—"Records of the Cape Colony" in thirty five volumes. Published 1897-1905. The records begin with 1793 and end with 1827 and are transcriptions from the papers in the Public Record Office in London. This monumental work is of the greatest value to those

studying this period of South African history. The early history of several towns and villages established after 1806 will be found in them.

**THEAL, DR. GEORGE MCCALL.**—"Records of South Eastern Africa," in nine volumes, referred to in this work as the Portuguese East Records abbreviated as P. E. R. Published from 1898-1903. These are copies of documents collected in various libraries and Archive Departments in Europe. Those who wish to study the early history of South Africa, especially the Portuguese period, will find useful information in these volumes.

**VALENTYN, REVEREND FRANCOIS.**—"Beschryving van Oost Indien" in 5 volumes. Published in 1726. Volume 5 contains a description of the Cape of Good Hope. Valentyn called at the Cape in 1685, 1695, 1705 and 1714. Valentyn gives an interesting map of the Cape of Good Hope and an inset of a portion of this showing the principal farms and names of the owners. Portion of the larger map will be found published in Molsbergen's "Reizen in Zuid Afrika," vol. 1, p. 48. He also gives the journal of Simon van der Stel to the Copper Mountains in 1685, the original of which is missing both in the Archives at The Hague and Cape Town. See page 58 and footnote as to original. It is reprinted in Molsbergen.

---

*Documents in the Cape Archives.—*

**"RESOLUTIEEN."** These are the resolutions of the Council of Policy and run from 1652 to 1795. They form one of the most important portions of the records of this period.

**"INKOMENDE EN UITGAANDE BRIEVEN.**—Letters Received and Despatched. These letters cover the period 1652 to 1795 and contain the official correspondence to and from the Government with the authorities in Holland and Batavia and various individuals and officials at the Cape.

**DAG REGISTER OF JOURNAL** kept by the Dutch East India Company from 1652 to 1795. This journal contains references to a variety of subjects, the arrival and departure of vessels, strangers or persons of note, weather conditions, local incidents, matters relating to the natives, reports of expeditions sent out to barter cattle or for exploration purposes, outstanding events affecting a locality or the whole community, and many other incidents too numerous to mention. I have made most use of the journal from 1652 to 1730.

"MEMORIALS."—In the Colonial Office Records from 1806 will be found a series of volumes marked "Memorials." These are petitions to the Governor from various individuals and bodies on a variety of subjects. Amongst them will be found a number from the inhabitants of certain areas in the Colony, asking permission to lay out and establish a village.

SCHRYVER, ENSIGN ISAAC.—Journal of his trip to the Inquas in 1689. Verbatim copy in the Cape Archives. See also Molsbergen's Reizen.

HARTOGH JAN.—Journal of his trip to the Hottentots in 1707 to barter cattle. Original in the Cape Archives. See also Molsbergen's Reizen.

VISSEB JAN LOURENS.—Journal of trip to the Hessequas in 1676 to barter cattle. Verbatim copy in Cape Archives.

BEUTLER, ENSIGN A. F.—The journal of his trip in 1752 will be found in Theal's "Historische Dokumenten" and Molsbergen's "Reizen in Zuid Afrika" and a verbatim copy in the Cape Archives.

VAN PLETENBERG, Governor Joachim Baron.—The journal of his trip to the Eastern frontier will be found in the Cape Archives and in the publications of Theal and Molsbergen.

"ORDONNANTIE BOEK."—Volume 1 and volumes 3-30 were received recently by the Cape Archives from the Surveyor-General's Office. The first volume commences in 1730. They contain copies of permits issued to farmers to occupy "loan" places and have proved of the greatest value in my researches. Reference to these volumes is made in this book. Sometimes they are referred to as "Ordonnantie Boek" and at others as "Wildschuts Boek." This series has given me most of the information of the early farm names and has helped me to trace the migration of the 18th century farmers.

"WILDSCHUT BOEK" 1687-1730, 1747-1748. These contain copies of the licences or permits issued to shoot game and graze cattle. The first years contain only permits to shoot game but afterwards refer to "loan" places occupied. See Ordonnantie Boek.

"OFFICIAL INDEX TO NOTICES" 1790-1837.—A manuscript volume in the records of the Colonial Office, Cape Town. This has reference to the various Government proclamations, notices and advertisements issued.

**INVENTARIS DER VERZAMELING KAAFTEN BERUSTENDE IN HET RYKS-ARCHIEF.** Published at 's Gravenhage 1867. In this<sup>o</sup> inventory will be found the maps, charts and plans relating to the Cape. Copies of most of the latter are preserved in the Cape Archives of which an inventory has been prepared.

Attention is drawn below to the more important maps and charts of the above which have been used by me.

Chart showing journey to the Amaquas in 1682. No. 77 Cape Archives Catalogue.

Chart showing the journey of Simon van der Stel in 1685.— No. 78 Cape Archives. This was published by Dr. Theal in 1882 in his Report upon the Archives of the Cape Colony.

Chart showing the march of Ensign Beutler and his party in 1752. No. 79. Published in Molsbergen's "Reizen," volume 3.

Map of the Cape to the "France Quartier," showing the extent of the Colony before the close of the 17th century. No. 42 Cape Archives.

**PART I.**

**BEFORE THE SETTLEMENT OF THE DUTCH.**

## INTRODUCTION.

The study of South African place names should commend itself to all who are interested in the history and geography of this country. It serves a two-fold purpose: It is an aid to the study of geography of the country and stimulates an interest in its early history. Before the approach of the Europeans in 1652 many of the bays and capes along the coast of South Africa had received names. These were mostly of Portuguese origin. Others were named later by some of the early Dutch navigators. But inland the case was different. No white man had penetrated more than a few miles in order to barter cattle with the natives. Such names that appear on maps before this relate only to large areas occupied by the natives. Therefore, when we commence our study of inland names in South Africa we can trace them no further back than the year of the arrival of the Dutch in 1652.

The study of place names in old countries often involves much research. During the course of centuries names have passed through so many vicissitudes that often it is very difficult indeed to come to a correct solution of their origin. Sometimes their origin is buried in the dim past and their history is obscured. On the other hand, in a new country, like South Africa, which is historically a young country, the task does not involve the same amount of difficulty. When it is stated that in 1806, at the second British occupation of the Cape, there were only six towns, and one or two of these mere villages, it will be realised that the study of town and village names commences a little over a century ago. But there were names given to the physical

features of the country by the natives. They had their names for mountains, plains, streams and rivers. Many of these still exist but a great number were rendered into the Dutch language from the native tongue or given an entirely new name. This is true of names of Bushman and Hottentot origin. But let us think of names given by the Bantu race and here we find ourselves in a large unexplored field which will yield much useful and interesting information. The smallest of places received a name from these people. The native territories alone will supply the investigator with enough material for thought as regards the origin of its place names. As a further development many Dutch places were at a later date anglicised. So to-day we may find names that have gone through three processes.

It is because the country is so young that there is all the more reason why the study of its place names should not be delayed. Another half a century may obscure the true origin of many of these. Let us take the stages in the history of a place name. An event happens at a particular locality. The place is given a name. There may be no reason to record this fact on paper. In course of time the place develops and becomes important. Where will the investigator of place names find out the origin and meaning of that name? He will have to depend upon hearsay evidence and the traditional story. In this country there are still persons old enough to assist in ascertaining the origin of place names that have come into existence say two generations ago. Failing documentary evidence he will find the living testimony of such persons invaluable.

In the study of place names in this province I shall deal with those relating to its physical features, its towns and villages. But there is another aspect, — its farm names. I mentioned that in 1806 there were only six towns in the Cape Colony. But there were also hundreds of farms scattered over the country. Some of these were occupied long before the close of the 17th century. The names given by the early owners to some of them were

those by which they are still known. The origin and history of such places must not be ignored as they tell us something about the history of that particular locality as well as of the country in general. Let me give just two examples. In the north-western part of the province, near the Olifants River, are two farms called *Bakkeley Plaats* and *Vredendal* respectively. In the 17th century the Dutch had an encounter with an unfriendly tribe of natives who had stolen cattle of another Hottentot tribe and the Europeans. § The latter, to commemorate the fight, named this place *Bakkeley Plaats*, from the Dutch *bakkeleyen*, to fight. It was occupied as a farm in 1750. Shortly after a treaty of peace was made with the natives at a place a little further on. This place they called *Vredendal*, the Vale of Peace. In the district of Stellenbosch is a farm *Libertas*. In 1706 the owner was one Adam Tas, one of the prime movers in the downfall of Governor W. A. van der Stel. Tas had been imprisoned in the Castle as being one of the ringleaders in a cause which he thought was just. Upon his liberation it is said he returned to his farm and called it *Libertas*, a play on his own name and that of the Latin word *liber*, free. Hundreds of farm names are very descriptive and give us some indication either of the physical features of the surrounding country, or tell us of the flora and fauna which once existed there. With the advance of civilization the fauna were driven before it and in some cases the flora exterminated. To-day these place names indicate that animals of all kinds and also certain varieties of flowers once existed, but they are to be found there no more.

Broadly speaking, there are two factors which have influenced place names in the Cape Province. These were the occupations by the Dutch and by the English. Up to 1795, when the British first took the Cape, the names were of native and Dutch

---

§Journal 17.5.1668. Mentioned in Journal of van der Stel's trip to Namaqualand 21.9.1685.

origin. From 1795 to 1803, when the country was transferred to the Batavian Government, in terms of the Treaty of Amiens, there was virtually no change. During the three years of the Batavian regime Dutch names were given. Two townships of Dutch origin were established at this time — Tulbagh and Uitenhage. From 1806, when the British finally occupied the Cape, a new order of things took place. Villages sprung up in the next quarter of a century and to most of these English names were given.

A number of places of Dutch origin have become anglicised, and curiously enough some of these have only been done half way.

This is particularly noticeable in coastal names, mountains and rivers. A few examples will illustrate this. *Robben Eiland* was the Dutch name given to an island a few miles from Table Bay. It derived its origin from the fact that numberless *robben* or seals were found there. To-day the Dutch portion of the name Robben has been retained, but the second part *Eiland* has been anglicised into island. Three centuries ago one of the Dutch navigators anchored in a bay on the south coast. It had been named *Agoada de Soa Bras* by Vasco da Gama in 1497. But in 1601 the Dutch called it *Mossel Baai*, from the Dutch *mossel* a mussel, and *baai*, bay, because they could get no refreshments here except mussels. To-day the first portion of this name has been retained while the second has received the English form. The Dutch words *berg*, mountain, and *rivier*, have been changed to the English form in describing mountain and river names. Thus a river or mountain name will have one part Dutch and another part English. *Wemmer's Hoek Bergen* is now Wemmer's Hoek Mountains; *Olifant's Rivier*, a name given in the 17th century, is now Olifant's River.

The settlement in South Africa of the Dutch and English nations by occupation and conquest respectively would naturally have influenced the nomenclature. But these two factors can

be broken up into component parts. At various times historical episodes took place which had some effect upon the naming of places. As instances of this we might take the arrival of immigrants such as the French Refugees in 1688, the British Settlers of 1820 and the German Legion, shortly after the Crimean War. The constant trouble with the border natives during the greater part of the 19th century and the military activities which took place gave rise to many names commemorating those days. The first serious attempt at road construction, towards the middle of last century, resulted in many towns and villages springing up which added to the list of town names. The establishment of churches and of mission stations throughout the Cape Colony added to the various groups of place names.

## II.

## THE PORTUGUESE PERIOD.

Towards the end of the 15th century the attempt to open up an ocean route from Europe to India was crowned with success by the maritime activity of the Portuguese. It was certainly one of the greatest events in the history of the world. The early history of South Africa is incomplete without reference to what it owes to those early navigators who braved the tempests and opened up the way to the east. During that century the Portuguese navigators had worked their way down the west coast of Africa and discovered and occupied the islands off the north-west coast from the Azores to the Cape Verde group. From time to time they pushed their way down further and further until they reached Cape Cross in 1485. The expedition which followed this was a memorable one as it solved the secret concerning the extent of the African continent. This expedition was under the command of Bartholomeu Dias who set out in 1486. After passing the last point, Cape Cross, where a *padrão*,<sup>1</sup> or pillar of stone, had been erected, Dias called at *Angra dos Ilheos*, the Bay of the Islets, later on known as *Angra Pequena*, or Little Bay, now Luderitz Bay. It was Diogo Cão, on his first voyage down the African coast, 1482-1484, and whom Dias followed, who was the first to carry "Padrões" on an exploring voyage. Up to this time the Portuguese had been content to erect perishable wooden crosses, or to

---

<sup>1</sup>A replica of this is in the Museum at Cape Town.

carve inscriptions into trees, to mark the progress of their discoveries.<sup>2</sup> Following the coast southward, and after repeatedly tacking, Dias reached an inlet to which he gave the name of *Angra das Voltas*, the Bay of Tacks or Turnings. This may have been far from it and farther still from the point at the mouth of the Orange River and called by modern geographers Cape Voltas.<sup>3</sup> Blown out to sea he next found himself in what is now Mossel Bay, to which he gave the name of *Angra dos Vaqueiros*, the Bay of the Herdsmen, because of the many droves of cattle he saw grazing on the shore. Dr. Theal says in his Portuguese Records that the position of Dos Vaqueiros Bay is doubtful. A later expedition renamed it Agoada de São Bras, as the day Dias saw it was dedicated to St. Blaize. *Cape St. Blaize*, was called after the bay or *vice-versa*.

About the place where Dias placed his second padrão there seems to be some difference of opinion. Dr. Theal says that it was on the islet now known as *St. Croix* in Algoa Bay and called by Dias *Ilheo da Santa Cruz*, the islet of the Holy Cross.<sup>4</sup> Ravenstein says Dias rounded *Cabo de Recife*, Reef Cape, now Recife, mentioned in 1576, and entered a vast bay, which was called *Bahia da Roca*, Rock Bay, now *Algoa Bay*. Within it were a group of rocky islets named the *Ilheos da Cruz*, Islands of the Cross. He suggests that Dias erected a wooden cross upon the larger of the islands but that in 1576, when the Portuguese navigator Perestrello surveyed the coast, it had disappeared. It might have been named, he remarks, because it was discovered on the day of the invention of the Cross. (May 2.)<sup>5</sup> Sailing past the *Ilheos Chaos*, Low or Flat Islands, now *Bird Islands*, he erected a padrão about twelve

---

<sup>2</sup> "The voyages of Diogo Cão and Bartholomeu Dias 1482-1488" E. G. Ravenstein. Royal Geographical Society 1900.

<sup>3</sup>Theal 1.32.

<sup>4</sup>Theal 1.34. Probably on the authority of de Barros.

<sup>5</sup>Voyages of Diogo Cão and Bartholomeu Dias 1482-1488.

miles beyond them on the mainland and dedicated it to St. Gregorio.<sup>6</sup> This place he identifies as *Cape Padrone*. But Canon E. B. Ford<sup>7</sup>, working on the description of the coast as given by Perestrello, who tried to determine the position of the pillar, places it somewhere at *Kwaaihoek* or *False Inlet*, some three or four miles west of the mouth of the Bushman's River. This conclusion is aided by other evidence — the "Roteiro" and the ancient maps. Another point regarding Dias' further monuments, which seems to be a matter of difference of opinion, is the turning point of Dias on the southern coast of Africa. Dr. Theal states that it was at the mouth of a river which received the name of *Rio de Infante*, so called because Joao Infante, Captain of one of the ships of Dias, was the first to leap ashore. He concludes that it was probably the *Great Fish River*, but that it may have been the *Kowie* or the *Keiskamma* as known to us. Ravenstein identifies it as the *Great Fish River*.<sup>8</sup> Canon Ford says there is but one river that can be fitted in with the description, that is the *Keiskamma*. Professor Schwarz has endeavoured to show that it was the *River Kowie*.<sup>9</sup>

It was on his return to Portugal that Dias discovered in 1487 the headland now the Cape Peninsula. Here he set up another Padrão which was dedicated to St. Philippe. It is unknown on what part of the Peninsula he landed. According to de Barros he named this southern extremity *Cabo Tormentoso*, the Stormy Cape, in memory of the storms which he had experienced. But on his return to Portugal the King changed

<sup>6</sup>Ravenstein says it is quite possible that this pillar was erected on St. Gregory's Day (March 12) though as a rule these dedications were made at home.

<sup>7</sup>Journal S.A. Association for the Advancement of Science, XVI. No. 4.

<sup>8</sup>Colonel R. Collins, describing his tour in 1809, writes of the river Infante or Great Fish River, Theal-Records VII.37.

<sup>9</sup>S.A. Journal of Science.

it to *Cabo da boa Esperança*—the Cape of Good Hope, as his hopes of reaching India by a sea route seemed to be realized. Ravenstein, however, says it was Dias himself who gave the latter name and tells us that a contemporary, Duarte Pacheco, distinctly informs us that it was Dias who gave the Cape its present name and that Christopher Columbus, who was present when Dias made his report, says the same.<sup>10</sup> The ancient maps have marked the group of mountains which fill the Cape Peninsula as "*terra fragosa*," broken land.<sup>11</sup>

Upon the return of Dias to Portugal it was decided to send out another expedition. But it was not until 1497, that Vasco da Gama was entrusted with this. He had on board of his flagship as chief pilot one who had been with Dias. He anchored at *St. Helena Bay* which he named.<sup>12</sup> His next place of call was *Mossel Bay* or *Agoada de Sao Bras*. On the 25th December he named *Dagama Natal*, now Natal, as commemorating the day when it was first seen by christians. His own name has been perpetuated in *Vasco da Gama Peak*. Da Gama touched at Mozambique and Melinde and from there sailed to Calicut. The object for which the Portuguese had striven had now been achieved. Subsequent voyages of the Portuguese added to the nomenclature. In Mr. Ravenstein's *Voyages of Cão and Dias* are copies of several ancient maps<sup>13</sup> which are useful as showing more or less the period when some places had been named. It is, however, very often difficult to

---

<sup>10</sup>Dr. Theal rejects marginal note on a document made by Christopher Columbus relative to Dias' voyage and says that the work of Pacheco cannot be placed in the scale against de Barros 1.45.

<sup>11</sup>Ravenstein.

<sup>12</sup>Because first seen on that Saint's day. Theal, *Portuguese East Records*. 1.3.

<sup>13</sup>(a) Henricus Martellus Germanus 1489; (b) Behaim 1492; (c) Anonymous 1502, published by Dr. Hamy; (d) Cantino's chart 1502; (e) Nicolas de Canerio 1502.

identify the exact locality of those shown on these charts with the present names.

In 1503 the Portuguese navigator Antonio da Saldanha anchored in the present *Table Bay* which was called *Agoada da Saldanha*, the watering place of Saldanha. It was named so "not for any water he took, but for the blood of his men shed there, endeavouring to land."<sup>14</sup> Saldanha climbed Table Mountain, called by the Portuguese *Tauoa do Cabo*, i.e., The Table Cape or Head.<sup>15</sup> de Barros, in his "Da Asia," says Saldanha climbed to the top of the mountain and "from it saw the end of the Cape and the sea beyond on the eastern side, where it formed a deep bay, into which two ridges of high rocks, now called Picos Fragosos, a large river emptied itself, which from the volume of its waters seemed to have followed on its course from a long distance."<sup>16</sup> This was False Bay which he saw and, on the isthmus connecting the Cape Peninsula with the mainland, what he mistook for the large river were small lakelets. This river he thought emptied itself into Table Bay\* and for over one hundred and eighty years such a stream appeared on the maps as flowing down from a great distance in the interior.<sup>17</sup> The *Picos Fragosos* which he saw were evidently Cape Point and Hangklip. Saldanha Bay retained its name until 1601 when the Dutch navigator Joris van Spilbergen called it *Tafel Baai* after the Tafelberg or Table Mountain. From his journal we read that after visiting St. Helena Bay he passed "Aguado Saldamo" and caught sight of *Elizabeth Island* (Dassen Island) which his party visited. A few days later he came into the present Table Bay. It is probable that when he passed "Aguado Saldamo," which is the present Saldanha

---

<sup>14</sup>Theal, Portuguese East Records 1.10.

<sup>15</sup>Naukerige Beschryvinge der Afrikaensche Gewesten by O. Dapper. Published in Amsterdam 1668. p. 636.

<sup>16</sup>P.E.R. 6.216.

<sup>17</sup>Theal 1.109.

Bay, he thought he saw the original Agoada da Saldanha. Although the first runs northwards and the second southwards, their general aspect from the sea are not unlike. When the mistake was discovered the former name of Table Bay was transferred to what is now Saldanha Bay. Whether the Portuguese had ever called at the present Saldanha Bay or not is a matter of conjecture. In Barrow's Travels we find marked on a map of that bay "Portugeze Kerkhoven" and "Portugues Konter."

Going down the coast line, from the present Olifants River to the Great Fish River, the following Portuguese names appear, many of these have disappeared from modern maps. I have relied to some extent for my information on Mr. Ravenstein's voyages of Cão and Dias, also his "A Journal of the first voyage of Vasco da Gama 1497-1499."<sup>18</sup> The present *Olifants River* was known to the Portuguese as *Rio do Infante*, apparently after Joao da Infante. The earliest record of the name is found in *Repertorio dos Tempos* of 1521. The Portuguese called the *Olifant Mountains* the *Serra dos Reis* and the *Berg River* the *Santiago River*, named by one of da Gama's men.<sup>19</sup> *Ilha Branca*, or White Island, was the name given to the present *Dassen Island*, no doubt on account of the guano deposit of the seabirds. In 1601 Joris van Spilbergen called it Elizabeth Island but this was changed in 1605 to *Coney Island* by Sir Edward Michelburne on account of the number of conies and seals found there.

On the map of Germanus 1489 *False Bay* is marked as *golfo dentro das Serras*, the gulf within the mountain ranges. This would appear to have been an appropriate name. The present name seems to have been given at an early date by the Portuguese. It derived its origin no doubt from *Cape Falso*

---

<sup>18</sup>Published in 1898 by the Hakluyt Society.

<sup>19</sup>P.E.R. 371.

now *Cape Hangklip*. The 16th and 17th century charts show Cape Falso, and 17th and 18th maps mark Hangklip as Falso. Where was Cape False? Paterson, the traveller, writes of Hangklip or Cape False, while the map in Sparrman's travels marks *Hangklip* about where *Danger Point* is, he has *False Hangklip*. Latrobe's map of 1818 marks *Cape False* or *Hangklip*. Percival, in his "Account of the Cape of Good Hope" 1804, says *False Bay* is so called from Cape False and Thompson, in his "Travels in Southern Africa" 1827, that False Bay was so called from ships having been deceived in coming in from the eastward. After rounding Hangklip, in dark weather imagining they had passed the real Cape of Good Hope, they stand to the north, when in a short time they find themselves on the Muizenberg beach at the bottom of False Bay.<sup>20</sup> Dapper, writing in 1668 says that mariners coming from the east often mistook this point for the Cape of Good Hope and according to the Portuguese, who thought it was the Cape of Good Hope after they had passed Cape Agulhas. If we look at the chart of the South African coast made by Perestrello in 1576 we find *Cabo Falso* marked about where *Danger Point* is.<sup>21</sup> Cape Hangklip, Hanging Rock, was marked, according to Ravenstein, by the Portuguese as *Ponta Espinhosa*, Thorny Point<sup>22</sup>, or, as one map marked it on the west, it might be Bok Point.<sup>23</sup>

*Cape Agulhas*, Needles, marked as such in 1502, was at first called *Ponta de S. Brandao*, that being the saint in whose honour it was named. Agulhas does not refer to the pointed rocks in its locality but to the fact that the navigators observed

---

<sup>20</sup>In regard to where Cape False was see "An Enquiry into the origin and derivation of certain South African Place Names. Rev. C. Pettman, S.A. Journal of Science. XVI. No. 5.

<sup>21</sup>P.E.R. 1.310.

<sup>22</sup>Hakluyt Society Publication.

<sup>23</sup>"Naukeurige Beschrijvinge der Afrikaansche gewesten" by O. Dapper, pp. 636. Published at Amsterdam, 1668.

that the needle pointed due north. RAVENSTEIN says it is probable that Dias dedicated the southernmost cape of all Africa to St. Brandon, an Irishman, whose day is May 16. *Cape Infanta*, still known in this corrupted form, was formerly *Cabo do Infante*, the Cape of Joao Infante, one of Dias' officers. *St. Sebastian's Bay*, from which the point takes its name, was dedicated to that saint by Perestrello in 1576. The *Breede River*, Broad River, named by the Dutch, was called *Rio da Nazareth* and the *Gourits River*, which is named after a Hottentot tribe, was given the name of *Rio dos Vaqueiros*, the River of the Cowherds. *Cape Vacca* (*Vacas*) was known as *Cabo das Vaccas*, the one meaning Cow Point and the other slender or Cattle Cape. *Flesh Bay*, known by the Dutch as *Vlees Baai*, was *Angra das Vaccas*, Cow Bay. It was named in 1601 by the Dutch navigator Paulus van Caerden under the command of Pieter Both, because for a few pieces of iron, he obtained as much horned cattle as he could take away. On this voyage he also named *Vis Baai* or *Fish Bay* because of the quantity of fish obtained there. Here and there along the coastal belt the early chartmakers have marked mountains, for instance, the western *Outeniqua Range* was the *Serra de S. Lazaro*, and the *Outeniqua Mountains* were known as *Serra da Estrella*, or Star Mountains, while the *Langekloof* was *Terra das trovoadas*, the land of thunderstorms, and the *Serra branca*, White Mountains, described the *Zuurberg* or *Addo Height*. *Gerecke Point* was *Ponta da Pescari*, Fishery Point, which appears on an ancient map of 1502. Before the Dutch Governor van Plettenberg gave his name to Plettenberg Bay it had been known by several names.<sup>24</sup> It had been known as *Bahia* or *Angra das Alagoas*, Bay of the lagoons and it is found in the forms *Lagoa*, *Algoa*, and *Algoa Bay*, but was subsequently dedicated

---

<sup>24</sup>Journal of van Plettenberg 1778.

to St. Catherine by Perestrello.<sup>25</sup> At one time it was known as *Fermosa Bay*.<sup>26</sup> *Saint Francis Bay* was named in 1576 by Perestrello who gave the name of *Cabo das Serras* to what is now either Seal Point or Cape St. Francis<sup>26</sup> as here terminated the mountain ranges which ran from the Cape of Good Hope along the coast to this Cape.<sup>27</sup>

During the 16th century the Portuguese were followed in their voyages to India by the ships of the French, English and Dutch nations. They did not form any settlement or carry on commerce below Delagoa Bay. During the first decade of the 17th century the English made Table Bay a port of call and refreshment and a few years later the Dutch East India Company resolved that their fleets should always touch here. In 1620 some officers of the English East India Company decided to proclaim the Sovereignty of King James I over the whole country. Two English officers, Fitzherbert and Shillinge, placed the flag of England on the present *Lions' Rump*, which they called *King James Mount*, and *Signal Hill*, a name which explains itself, they called *King Charles Mount*.<sup>28</sup> But their action did not receive confirmation either by the Directors of the Company or the English Government. From a favourable report sent in to the Directors of the Dutch East India Company it was decided to form a refreshment station on the shores of Table Bay. Accordingly Jan van Riebeeck arrived in 1652. This begins the history of the European settlement in South Africa.

<sup>25</sup>P.E.R. 1.317.

<sup>26</sup>See page 70 in connection with Plettenberg Bay.

<sup>27</sup>P.E.R. 1.319.

<sup>28</sup>"Travels into Africa and Asia." Sir Thomas Herbert. Published 1677.

## III.

## THE NATIVE PERIOD.

The study of South African place names would be incomplete without a reference to those of native origin. As we shall see further on that the names given by Europeans show their advance into the country, so do we find that the movements of the early natives can be traced in the place names which have survived. We still find place names of Bushman and Hottentot origin in those localities where these people lived. They inhabited the southern part of Africa before the first Europeans touched here. It might therefore be more in place to give here a brief survey of these and other native people and to refer to a few of the place names connected with them. Broadly speaking the western and south-eastern coast and the Karoo give us many names of Bushman and Hottentot origin. Some are even found in the Eastern Province of the Cape, but in this latter area and further afield we find mostly names of Bantu origin.

The first comers to the southern parts of Africa were the Bushmen, a hunting people. When they came no man can tell. They were followed by the Hottentots, a nomadic race, which had evidently not come many centuries before the Portuguese first visited the shores of South Africa. They came from the far interior in the north-east of the African continent and travelled towards the south-west. They had been driven down by a race stronger than themselves. The Hottentots in turn pushed the Bushmen in advance. The progress of the former was arrested by the Atlantic a few degrees south of the equator;

this made them move down the western coast dispossessing the Bushmen until they came to the Cape of Good Hope. After a long struggle with the hunters, the pastoralists pushed across the first mountain barrier to the south-east, the present Hottentots Holland Range. The Hottentots advanced to the eastward along the coast but their progress was slow owing to the physical features of the country and the poisoned arrows of their opponents. The abode of the Bushmen was in many instances the arid deserts of this country and the inaccessible mountains. They were constantly on the move seeking hunting grounds or swooping down upon the cattle of their bitter enemy the Hottentots. The latter, however, had to move slowly with their cattle as they could not hastily change one pasturage for another. While the stronger of the two races was pushing the weaker one onward they were in constant conflict with each other. The Bushmen could not prevent this advance yet they were capable of causing much mischief. The Hottentots, during these wars, captured the Bushmen girls and made them inferior members of their families. Probably from the first conflict of these races a mixture of blood took place which had no doubt reached a considerable degree by the time the Cape of Good Hope was reached. However, there was no intercourse between the Bushmen and Hottentot women. In general there was a great animosity between the two races. The Hottentots were located along the western part of South Africa between the Cape of Good Hope and the lower portion of the Orange River. At the beginning of the sixteenth century they extended from *Walvis Bay* on the west round to the mouth of the *Umtamvuna River* (meaning the home of the hippopotamus) on the south-east. They lived in villages or kraals situated at varying distances from each other. When a community became too large an offshoot set up in another locality. There was a tendency for such a branch to become independent as it was necessary for them to be strong enough to withstand the attacks of the Bushmen and the wild animals.

When the Hottentots had commenced to push the Bushmen down the continent they themselves were driven out of their localities by a more powerful race. This was the Bantu — an entirely agricultural people.

The Bantu tribes, upon their arrival at the lake region, compelled the Hottentots to move southward. In successive hordes they moved down from Central Africa. Tribe followed tribe; the stronger overcame the weaker. One section turned into the interior towards the Kalahari; one section kept along the eastern border, and came in contact with the Bushmen whose arrows availed little against the ox-hide shield of their opponents. The Bushmen were thus being squeezed in on both sides — by the Hottentots from the west and by the Bantu from the east. The Bushmen were consequently driven to the open plains to the north of the mountain ranges running along the coastline. The victorious Kaffirs pushed forward to the west until they came against a totally different enemy — the white man. This very brief summary of the story of the native races in South Africa is given so that the reader may better understand the illustrations of the place names still found.

In this contribution to the study of place names I have made no attempt to probe deeply into the origin and meaning of native nomenclature. This line of enquiry requires a thorough knowledge of native languages which I do not profess to possess. The student who takes it up will find a rich and extensive field for investigation. Very little is known of the Hottentot language and of the Bushman much less. An enquiry should certainly be made into place names derived from Bushman, Hottentot and Bantu origin; it will prove as fascinating as research into those of other origin. For the layman to wander amongst the intricacies of these languages and derive the meaning of place names would make him undertake a difficult task and probably lead him into many errors. But I cannot, however, refrain from setting down some of the more common known

names which occur in the Cape Province. The contributions of the Reverends Charles Pettman and J. R. L. Kingon<sup>1</sup> on native place names will help in this enquiry.

There are many early Bushman and Hottentot names that have disappeared entirely from our nomenclature. Some of these are found in the diaries of expeditions and travellers. I will refer to a few in another section. There are some native names that have received a Dutch or English equivalent by translation; there are others again that have been given a Dutch or English name quite different to the native one. It is very difficult to arrive at the meaning of those place names of Bushman or Hottentot origin which have been corrupted by Europeans or the Bantus. Most of the original names have reference to the physical features of the country or to special circumstances and are more expressive in the native language than a translation could do them justice. The names I give below will serve to indicate how extensive the field for research is and how this might be further extended by those who have a knowledge of the native languages. It will also show the value that these native places add to the place names of the country.

The word Hottentot is not of native origin but was applied to the tribes found by the Dutch. The Hottentots called themselves Khoikhoi, *i.e.*, men of men, men *par excellence*. They called the other tribes Sa, the Sonqua mentioned in the Cape Archives. In the Journal of 1656 the name Soanquas is found. The name Sonqua which means murderers, robbers,<sup>2</sup> still survives in *Sonquas Drift*.<sup>3</sup> The termination qua is found in the descriptive names of the various tribes and means the people of,

<sup>1</sup>"Hottentot Place Names" C. Pettman, S.A. Journal of Science, Vols. XVII and XIX. "A Survey of Aboriginal Place Names" J. R. L. Kingon, M.A. *ibid* Vol. XV.

<sup>2</sup>Journal 31.10.1657.

<sup>3</sup>Mentioned in the Journal 28.2.1704.

sons of, men of. There were several qua tribes in the early days but many have not been perpetuated, e.g., the Inqua and the Chanouqua. Each native tribe usually took its distinctive tribal name from that of the chief under whom it had become independent. For instance, the Cochoqua were ruled by the chief Cocho and the Gonaqua by Gona. In the Van Rhynsdorp district we find *Konaquas Berg*, probably referring to the latter. *Hessequas Kloof*, found spelt in the records of 1732 as *Hisqua*, gets its name from the *Heisiqua Hottentots*.<sup>4</sup> This tribe is mentioned in 1667 as a "new nation" living towards the east, about fourteen days journey from the Fort.<sup>5</sup> They are mentioned as early as 1661. *Attaquas Mountains*, in the district of Mossel Bay, and *Attaquas Kloof*, a farm in Caledon refer to the *Attaquas*.<sup>6</sup> The *Obiqua Mountains* near Wellington, marked on the divisional map of Paarl as *Hawequas Mountains*, are called after the *Obiqua* tribe which is referred to in the Journal of the 28th November, 1671 as the *Ubequas*, a large, wild and roving tribe, armed with bow and arrow and subsisting only by theft. This was a Bushman tribe which kept to the fastnesses of the mountains and lived by plundering the farmers and the Hottentots. They caused much damage to the latter, living between the Breede and Gourits Rivers. The word *Obiqua* means murderers. In the Calvinia district is an *Ibequa River*, a tributary of the Kromme River, which is probably another form of this name. There was a tribe called the *Outeni-qua* (*Outeniqua*), meaning the men laden with honey which name still survives in the *Outeniqua Mountains*. The Journal of van Plettenberg's journey in 1778 says that the area "Houtniqua Land" derives its name from the Hottentots who dwelt there

---

<sup>4</sup>Hahn p. 28. The Journal of 30.11.1672 speaks of the *Hessequas*.

<sup>5</sup>Journal of Cruythoff's trip.

<sup>6</sup>Mentioned in the Journal of the 23.11.1668 as a tribe similar to the Cape Hottentots.

in former years and were called "Houteniqua of Zakkedragers." Then we have the name *Namaqualand* so called after the Hottentots, first visited by Europeans in 1661. Another tribe of Hottentots Griquias has given rise in later years to a mixed race of Griquas from which *Griqualand West* and *Griqualand East* derive their origin.

When we look at the map of the Cape Colony published by the Surveyor-General in 1895 and select names likely to have a native origin we are struck with the number ending in *ouw*. This sometimes takes the form of *touw* and refers to the Hottentot *Daob*, feminine *Daos*, a poort, a mountain pass or path. The name with which it is compounded will invariably be found to refer to a path over or between a range of mountains. In 1732 a loan farm was granted in the present district of Van Rhynsdorp and was called *Wiedouw*, spelt on the map as *Widouw*; this might refer to a place of the same name in the district of Clanwilliam. In the latter district a place *Bidouw* was granted in 1750. Over the Cedarberg Mountains is a *Krakadouw-Pass*. To the north of this range is a mountain chain and pass called *Nardouw*, which comes from the Hottentot *Nara*, flat. Lichtenstein in his account of de Mist's journey to the north in 1803 refers to going over the top of this range "which is flat." The name *Cardouw Pass*, as spelt on the map, is found in the forms as *Kardouw*, also marked on the map as *Cartouw*. There is a farm *Cardouw* and also one *Het Afgaan van de Cardouw*. When granted in 1731 as a loan place it is spelt *Cardouw*. The meaning is a narrow pass. Would the origin of *Gydoberg* and *Gydo Pass* in Ceres be *Guidaos*, from *Guib* one of the Euphorbia species and *Daos*, a poort? *Tradouw Pass*, in the Swellendam district, is derived, says Pettman, from the Hottentot words, *Taras* a woman, and *Daos*, a poort. There are farms *Tradouw* issued on loan in 1725, and *Op de Tradouw*, respectively. The name of Hottentots Holland Kloof, now Sir Lowry's Pass, was known by

the Hottentots as *Gantouw*, and by the early Dutch as *Elands Pad*.<sup>7</sup> Pettman derives this from the Hottentot words *Kani*, an Eland and *Daos*, a Poort. He has given us a very good illustration of the corruption of Hottentot place names in the present name of *Trek̄k̄entouw*, a river in the George district. In van Plettenberg's Journal it is mentioned as *T̄rāka de T̄hou of Vrouwe Weg*. Mr. Pettman shows the way travellers have recorded this name during a period of half a century. Some of the fourteen forms which he gives appear as *Krākaou*, *T* or *K. radadāhouw*, *Trāka da Touw*, *Trek̄-aan-de-Touw*. This is said to mean in its original form "The Maiden's Ford" and would suggest, he writes, that the former part of the name referred to the Hottentot *Taras*, a woman, and the latter *Daob*, a way or path.<sup>8</sup>

We have also a few other names with the *Douw* ending as *Koek̄douw Berg*, north of Mosterts-Hoek, *Kouw Douw*, in the district of George, *Driesdouw* in Willowmore, *Kareedouw*, in Humansdorp, *Bittouwsfontein*, Somerset East. To the uninitiated the name *Touws River* might appear to have reference to the Dutch *Touw* a rope but it is apparently a native name. Revd. Dr. Kingon in his "Aboriginal Place Names" has included it in his list of names ending in *ouw*. The enquiry becomes more interesting when trying to find out its origin by observing the various forms in which this name was written. In 1748 the name is spelt as *Thause*, in 1755 as *Thou* and *Thouw* and in 1762 as *Touw*. The journal of Governor van Plettenberg refers to it as *Touws River*. Is it probable that the spelling of 1748 *Thause* might stand for *Touse* or *Buffels River*? (See page 60).

The next group of names which, like the foregoing, have a Bushman or Hottentot origin is that ending in *Kama*. The

<sup>7</sup>Dagverhaal van de Baas Thuynter Jan Hartogh 1707.

<sup>8</sup>S.A. Journal of Science XVII. 338.

Hottentot word for water is *Gami*<sup>9</sup> and the word is invariably spelt as *Kama* and *Kamma*, the latter being the more common form although the first is the more correct. In the Dutch records it is indifferently spelt with one or two m's and the letter c is interchanged for the k. In G. F. Wreede's "Hottentots Woordelijst" of the 17th century it is spelt with two m's.<sup>10</sup> According to Stow, *Kama* is a Bushman word also meaning water. This termination appears in the following *Zitzikamma* (George), *Tsitsikamma* (Queenstown), *Kraggakamma* (Port Elizabeth), *Coegakamma* and *Sapkamma* (Uitenhage). In the Knysna district there is a *Douwakamma* and a *Gouwakamma* and in Alexandria a *Toekamma*. In Oudtshoorn there is the *Kammanassie* which is found spelt in the early records and by cartographers in a variety of forms.

To the above list of names can be added the following which are undoubtedly of native origin. There are two words which are rather puzzling at first sight and appear to have different derivations but apparently are the same. I refer to *Traka* and *Tarka*; Pettman has derived this from *Taras*, a woman, and *lab*, a river. Beutler in 1752 records passing the "*Tarka of Vrouwensrivier*" (Women's River), i.e., the *Tarka River* in the present Albert District. Barrow also writes of the *Traka* or Maiden River.<sup>11</sup> It would appear that the *Tarka*, a tributary of the Great Fish River, is of the same origin and from which the town *Tarkastad* and the district of *Tarka*, derive their names. *Dwyka River*, Barrow tells us, means Rhinoceros River and the *Gamka River*, Lions River, which van Plettenberg in 1778 also refers to as *Leeuwen River*.<sup>12</sup> The *Kauka River*, a tributary of the *Traka* in the Prince Albert and Willowmore districts, is

<sup>9</sup>Kingon "Aboriginal Place Names."

<sup>10</sup>Molsbergen's "Reizen in Zuid-Afrika," 1.219.

<sup>11</sup>Travels 1.52.

<sup>12</sup>Ibid I. 47.48. Steedman 1.99 also gives the same meaning to the *Dwyka*.

mentioned in the journal of van Plettenberg as meaning Buffels or Buffalo River and Beutler records another river of the same name and meaning which refers to the present well-known *Buffalo River*. The names *Nauga*, *Coega*, *Kariega* and *Gouna* appear in more than one district in the Cape Province. The origin of the *Gamtoos* and *Gourits Rivers* is given further on. The *Gouph*, the area under the Nieuwveld in the Karoo, is referred to in 1763 as *De Koup*. It is also found spelt as *Coup*, *Gouph* and in a proclamation of 1818 as *Ghoup*. *Commadagga* is spelt in 1778 as *Camdaga*, and by Sparrman as *Quammedaceka* and in the map of Backhouse as *Kammadagga*.<sup>18</sup> Pettman says it is to be referred to the two Hottentot words, *Homi* (a hill, mountain), and *Daxab*, *Cannabis Sativa*, dagga, or wild hemp, and really means *Daggaberg*. The *Karoo*, a name which refers to a large area of the Cape Province, is derived from the Hottentot word *Kuru*, meaning dry, arid, and was well described by that early race.

There are many more names which could be mentioned. I have not endeavoured to give the many native names which appear in Namaqualand, many of which are mentioned in his book by Sir James Alexander in 1838. It will be observed that I have made no attempt to refer to names of Bantu origin. A compilation of such would fill many pages. What I have had in mind in setting down these few place names which have their origin either from the Bushman or Hottentot languages is to show the wide field of research in this direction alone. We find that many place names given by the early native races still remain, that many others have become corrupted by the contact with the European or have been translated into the Dutch or English languages or have entirely disappeared.

---

<sup>18</sup> "A visit to the Mauritius and South Africa." James Backhouse, London, 1844.

In glancing at the map of the Cape Province we find many place names referring to the Bushman and Hottentot races themselves. This gives us some idea of the vast area over which they were distributed. A few of such names might be of interest. There is *Hottentots Kloof* (Ceres); *Hottentots Holland* and *Hottentots Holland Mountains*; *Hottentots River* and *Hottentots Bush* (Aberdeen); *Hottentots Fontein* (Jansenville) and *Hottentots Poort* (Uitenhage). These are chosen to show the variety of names. There are innumerable rivers and kloofs compounded with the word Bushman and found in various forms. They usually appear in the Dutch as *Bosjesmans* or *Boschjesmans*. The name *Bosjesmans Kloof*, a common one, is found in the districts of Paarl, Caledon, Malmesbury, and Sutherland. The *Bushmans River*, in the Eastern Province, is well known, but the name is also found in Bredasdorp and Beaufort West districts.

**PART II.**

**THE DAYS OF THE DUTCH EAST INDIA  
COMPANY AND BATAVIAN REPUBLIC.**

## I.

## EXPLANATION OF TERMS.

There are many words connected with South African place names which are entirely of Dutch origin and are in many cases peculiar to this country. Some may be readily termed Africanderisms as they are only applicable to and in use in this country. The English translations of such words would not convey the same meaning when used in South Africa and perhaps a brief explanation of some of these may be appreciated. *Nek* the Dutch for neck, is applied to a depression between two hills, a narrow ridge connecting two hills or mountains, the *col* of the French, over which a road generally leads, as *Kloof Nek* and *Debe Nek*. The English neck refers to a long, narrow track of land projecting from the main body, or a narrow body connecting two larger tracts. *Hoek*, a corner, angle, nook, edge, is understood as a secluded mountain valley with a narrow entrance which is easily reached but where, unless by travelling the same way, egress is difficult, as, *Wemmers Hoek* and *Fransche Hoek*. *Ruggens* literally backs, from the Dutch *Rug*, back, refer to "hills or ridges, which like the arched backs of closely packed animals, run side by side, as in the *Winterhoek*, Caledon, and Bredasdorp Districts in the Cape Colony,"<sup>1</sup> and *Zwarte Ruggens* in Uitenhage. *Krans* or *Krantz*, from the Dutch *Krans*, a wreath or garland, is applied to steep cliffs which

---

<sup>1</sup>"Africanderisms," Rev. Chas Pettman.

crown so many of the South African mountains, used to designate a precipice. The word cliff, as used in England, would hardly be applicable as it has more of a maritime meaning there. *Klip*, the Dutch for rock, cliff, reef, generally applied to some remarkable boulder, as *Paarklip*, *Hondeklip* and *Hangklip*. The latter is derived from *hangen*, to hang, and *klip*, a rock or cliff. It is a rock promontory on the eastern side of False Bay. Compare the English Black Rock and Roman Rock.

*Kloof*, Dutch meaning cleft, crevice, slit, chasm, is a deep ravine down the side of a mountain, a ravine running up between two hills or up the side of a mountain. The English cliff, ravine or glen does not come up to the same meaning. Compare the word clove used in the United States, meaning a cleft, fissure, ravine, as in Kaatershill Clove or the Stony Clove. In Scotland the word cleugh has the same meaning as in South Africa. There are innumerable *Kloofs* in South Africa. *Poort* from the Dutch meaning gate, gateway, entry, is applied to a narrow pass between precipitous hills or mountains, a mountain ravine, the bed of a torrent through which a road passes as, *Karoo Poort*, *Zeven Weeks Poort*. *Berg*, plural *Bergen*, the Dutch for a mountain and as applied to a mountain or a hill, as, *Picquetberg*, *Chavonnesberg*, and *Tygerberg*. We are generally able to know the character of the mountain regions by the names given them. For instance, *Sneeuwbergen*, so named because they are occasionally covered with snow, *Zwartbergen*, mountains appearing of a black or dark blue tint, *Wittebergen*, mountains with white quartz summits or sides, *Stormbergen*, noted for the violence of the thunderstorms that break over their summit, *Winterbergen*, a cold, cheerless, naked mountain region, *Boschbergen*, densely wooded mountains and *Zuurbergen*, a range of hills of inferior height and uniform outline covered with *zuur* or sour herbage. The term *berg* is used for

any raised eminence or elevated land except it be of small size when it is called a *kopje*, literally a small head. The names of the mountains very often describe their shape, as the *Pramberg*, Dutch, pram, a breast, in the Calvinia district, is shaped like a woman's breast, *Pramkoppes*, Maraisburg, *Tandjesberg*, Dutch *tand* a tooth, rugged like teeth, (the Spanish Sierra), *Torenberg*, Dutch, *torën*, a tower, on account of its tower-like shape, *Theebus Berg*, Dutch *theebus*, a tea caddy, and *Tafelberg*, Dutch *tafel*, a table, on account of its flat top. The name *Spitskop* frequently occurs and is descriptive for it is the Dutch for pointed head, it might also be known as sugar loaf. Some high isolated hill is often named *Uitsigkop*, literally look out, or is referred to as *Spionkop*, from the Dutch *spion*, a spy. One can generally see from the top of such eminences a vast extent of the surrounding country. *Paardeberg*, Dutch *paard*, a horse, no doubt called so on account of the number of "wilde paarden" which roamed on its sides. In the Journal of 1701 mention is made of the "Paardebergen" near Paarl.

In South Africa a *Rivier* or river is applied to a flowing stream or a dry water course and during its course has several names. In some cases the word river, which means a large stream of water flowing in a channel on land towards the ocean, is hardly applicable in this country where it has often reference to a brook or stream. *Spruit*, Dutch for a shoot or sprout, is used throughout South Africa in referring to the somewhat deep, naturally worn channels by which the rain water finds its way to the rivers.<sup>2</sup>

They are the feeders which supply the parent stream near its source. *Gal* from the Dutch for a hole, gap, opening, is applied to the long reaches of deep water which are found in many of the watercourses even when they do not flow. It can hardly be translated by its English equivalent of hole or channel. The

---

<sup>2</sup>Pettman's "Africanderisms."

proper names of rivers are generally given either from their form as *Groote*, great, *Breede*, broad, *Kromme*, crooked, *Zonder Eind*, without end, or the peculiar nature of their water as, *Zout*, salt, *Braakke*, saltish, *Zwarte*, black, *Witte*, white, *Modder*, muddy, *Zand*, sand; their agricultural qualities as, *Vette*, fat, *Melk*, milk, or from animals which are found living in them or near their banks, as *Vis*, fish, *Zeehoe*, hippopotamus, *Rhenoster*, rhinoceros, *Buffel*, buffalo and *Olifant*, Elephant.

*Vlaakte*, a plain or flat, is used for large flat surfaces and is frequently found. *Duin*, plural *Duinen*, down, sandhills, well describes the sandhills along the coast, as *Kaapsche Duinen*, *Macassar Downs*. It hardly means the same as the English downs which refer to undulating plains along the coast.

The word *Fontein*, Dutch for a spring or fountain, is largely used in South Africa as indicating a spring and is usually compounded with a word which vividly describes the condition of the water found in it. For example, *Braakfontein*, from the Dutch *Braak* meaning saltish. The word *braak* may refer not only to the nature of the water but also to that of the soil. *Vallei*, Dutch for valley, vale, dale, has generally a reference to the Africanderism *Vlei*. It has a double meaning, the one as just given, and when referring to a hollow surface or depression in which water accumulates in the wet season forming a shallow lake it is termed as *Vlei*, as, *Wagenmakers Vallei*, *De Beers Vlei*, *Verloren Vlei* and *Vogel Vlei*.

The old Hottentot word *Karoo* used to describe the vast interior of the Cape Province has remained unchanged. It means dry, sparsely covered, hard. The soil is exceedingly fertile when water is procurable and after good rains is a veritable flower garden. The vegetation consists of fleshy, succulent-leaved herbs and shrubs, and deeply rooted bulbous plants, which afford splendid pasturage for sheep and goats.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.

A *Drift*, from the Dutch meaning course, the course or direction along which anything is driven, is a passage through a river, a ford, and is universally used in South Africa to indicate that part of a river where the road crosses it. For instance *Sonquas Drift, Trompetters Drift, Witte Drift*. *Kuil* is the Dutch for a hole or 'pitt' and is used to denote a hole where water collects. This word is often used in the same sense as *Gat*, described above. What is now *Kuils River* was formerly known as *De Kuilen* (plural of *kuil*). We have the word in *Daniels Kuil*. *Kraal*, found in South Africa in a great number of farm names, compounded with another word, means a cattle enclosure, or native village, and comes from the Spanish *corral*, a court, enclosure and the Portuguese *curral*, a cattle pen, paddock. The name appears to have been used by the early Dutch to indicate the Hottentot villages. The words compounded with Dutch *veld* and *land*, field and country, are very expressive and give us a good idea of the nature of the country. They are used sometimes in referring to large tracts of country as *Zwartland*, now the district of Malmesbury, literally black country, on account of its soil, the name is found in the records in 1701<sup>4</sup> as *Swarte land*, *Sandveld* or Sandfield, the tract of country along the coast, between the *Berg* and *Olifants Rivers*, crossing the *Hardveld* or Hardfield is reached, a bare granite region. There are also the *Koude Bokkeveld*, the Cold Goat Country, the *Warme Bokkeveld*, the *Bosjeveld*, along the Breede River, the *Grasveld* in Swellendam, and the *Strandveld* in Caledon.

---

<sup>4</sup>Journal 26.8.1701.

## II.

## THE DUTCH REGIME.

The first Dutch occupation of the Cape from 1652 to 1795 has enriched our nomenclature considerably. There are two principal sources from which references to these names have been derived. First the journals of explorers sent out from time to time to open up a cattle trade with the natives and discover the physical features of the country and second the names given by farmers, the stockbreeders who followed in their wake. Both of these will be dealt with at a later stage. From the study of the migration of the farmers we are able to learn the direction in which they moved and thus see the gradual expansion of the Colony during the 18th century. It might be of interest to make a few introductory remarks commencing with the foundation of the Cape Settlement in 1652. The object of the Dutch East India Company, chartered in 1602 as a trading Company, in sending out Jan van Riebeeck to the Cape, was solely for the purpose of establishing a refreshment station. It was very necessary to have a port of call where the scurvy-stricken seafarers could obtain fresh meat, vegetables and water. The Company did not contemplate forming a Colony. Colonisation, as we understand it, was not exactly part of their programme. In the first years the Cape authorities undertook to carry on their own farming operations but in course of time this proved expensive and unsatisfactory. Towards the end of the 17th century they handed over these activities to the farming population. This community had grown to some importance with the passing of years. The first farmers were discharged Company's servants

who had been granted land in 1657 along the *Liesbeeck*. In course of time their number was augmented by other discharged servants as well as by emigrants sent out from Holland. For example, several Netherlanders came out from time to time to the Cape and in 1688 a batch of French Refugees were sent out to promote viticulture.

The *Liesbeeck* remained the Colonial boundary for nearly a quarter of a century. In 1672 the boundary was extended to *Hottentots Holland* where the Company established a farming and cattle station. This place is mentioned in the records as early as 1657<sup>1</sup> and was designated by the Hottentots as their Holland or Fatherland because of its rich pastures and because they wanted to give the Dutch some idea of its excellence.<sup>1</sup> From this place name the mountain range and the pass over it took their names. *Hottentots Holland Kloof*, now known as *Sir Lowry Pass*, was called by the Dutch *Elands Pad, Pad*.<sup>2</sup> Compare the former name of *Fransche Hoek Pass* — *Olifants Pad*.<sup>3</sup> It seems evident that the pioneers in their first crossing of some of the mountain ranges followed the tracks made by the larger animals, such as the elephant and eland. The journalist of an expedition to the north in 1660 has several entries which indicate this clearly. In one place he writes, "We then continued our northern course, following the rhinosceros paths which skirt the mountains. Had we not found them we would have found it very difficult to proceed as only thorns and 'krupel bosch' are growing here." And again he makes this entry, "followed the elephants' paths, as it would otherwise have been impossible to proceed with the oxen."

The cattle station at *Hottentots Holland* was placed in charge of a sergeant and several soldiers. Here were kept all the cattle

<sup>1</sup>Journal 6.6.1657.

<sup>2</sup>Dagverhaal gehouden door Jan Hartogh 1707.

<sup>3</sup>Mentioned as such in Simon van der Stel's instructions in 1699.

and sheep bartered from the natives on the other side of the mountain range and the sergeant in charge, with some men, was sent out to carry on a cattle trade. The present country around here has altered considerably since then. The records show that the mountain kloofs were covered with evergreen forests which produced valuable timber. The grass was the finest growing in the country and every summer men were busy with scythes cutting down this hay and bringing it into Cape Town for the stables of the Company.<sup>4</sup>

A further advance was made in the expansion of the Colony in 1679 when the first farmers commenced to plough the soil at *Stellenbosch* which Governor Simon van der Stel had visited shortly before and named. By 1687 several farms were marked off along the *Berg River* in the *Draakenstein Valley* and given to settlers who had arrived from Holland. They were followed the next year by the French Refugees.

One factor which at first kept back the expansion of the country was the restriction on the farmers to barter cattle from the natives. The Company looked upon this as their monopoly and were not anxious that the farmers should spread themselves out. They also wanted them to live close to each other and to headquarters so as to be in easy call in case of an attack from an enemy both within and without the country. Governor Simon van der Stel in his Instructions in 1699 to his successor, his son William Adriaan van der Stel, made several references to the farmers and the cattle trade and their desire to go into the interior. He said they "are always looking out for places far inland in order to make their living by bartering with the Hottentots for cattle, butter, and milk." He remarked that as the Company's chief aim was to hold the land in safety the Europeans should not be allowed to live far inland and away from the settled areas within easy reach of the Castle. He wanted the farmers to live near each other so that if an enemy appeared they could be

---

<sup>4</sup>Read the Journal.

readily called to arms. Those living at a distance pretended they did not hear the signal guns of alarm but simply retired further into the interior.

The decision of the authorities to give over the farming operations to the Cape farmers resulted in a gradual movement of that community in different directions. The Company looked to them to supply their shipping with corn, wine and meat. By 1700 the farmers had occupied a rectangle between the Cape and the mountain barriers some fifty miles each way. They had kept along the water courses. Whatever restraining powers the authorities tried to enforce to keep back the migration, they proved somehow unsuccessful. Nothing could stay the dispersion. Imperceptible at first, but realised more from the beginning of the 18th century, the country became a flourishing agricultural Colony from being merely a refreshment station. When the Cape was ceded to the British in 1795 the boundary had extended to the *Great Fish River*.

This movement of the stockfarmers assisted greatly in increasing the place names. When a farmer had selected his farm he gave it a name or adopted one which it had previously received. As far as we can identify these names with the farm names which exist, we can approximately follow the directions of the migration. But it may not be out of place to describe briefly the system of land tenure which was in vogue during the 18th century. Most of the farms beyond the more settled areas in the Western Province as the Cape, Stellenbosch, Paarl and Swellendam were occupied on "loan." In describing what a "loan" place was it will be an aid to understand the reason why many of the townships laid out during the first half of the 19th century were situated on sites of "loan" farms.

There were three forms of land tenure, namely, freehold, "loan" and quitrent. In the settled districts many of the farms were held under the first form when a title deed was issued and registered by the government. A farmer who wished

to graze his cattle on unalienated land had to obtain permission to do so. The usual procedure was for him to select a suitable spot, particularly where there was a supply of water. He applied for a permit which granted him the right to graze his cattle for a period of six or twelve months. This permission had to be renewed at the end of every six or twelve months, the renewal was seldom refused. If the pasturage gave out he would seek another spot trekking further away with his cattle. He might occupy two or three farms in this manner but was subject to the recognised rent. The only right this man had was to graze his cattle provided that he did not interfere with the rights of persons adjoining. He had no title to the ground and thus could not sell or bequeath it. But if he erected buildings on the farm, generally known as the *opstal*, and the renewal of lease was not granted, the government compensated him for the *opstal*. The latter he could sell or bequeath. Such a farm was called a "loan place" (*leenings plaats*) and was the second form of tenure. In several cases when the government decided to lay out a township the annual lease was not renewed. The farmer was compensated for the improvements he had made and in some instances was given the choice of land elsewhere. Such were the cases in the laying out of Uitenhage, Cradock, Beaufort West, etc. The easy method of obtaining land on "loan" was one of the contributing causes of the expansion of the Colony. The fifteen years quitrent form was where the renewal of the lease had only to be made after the expiration of fifteen years. In 1813 Sir John Cradock altered the system of "loan" places and by this change only two forms of tenure were recognised namely, freehold and perpetual quitrent. In the latter case the property could be made freehold by capitalising the rent for twenty years. Generally speaking Cradock's law is still the land law of the Cape Province.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup> "Early Cape Land Tenure" by C. Graham Botha. S.A. Law Journal, 1919.

During the 18th century the Colony was divided into four districts, namely the Cape, Stellenbosch founded in 1682, Swellendam in 1745 and Graaff-Reinet in 1785. Except for the first named each of these was administered by a Landdrost or Magistrate who represented the central government at Cape Town. His duty was to see that law and order were maintained and that the laws passed by the authorities were carried out. He was assisted in his work by a Board of Heemraden — petty magistrates — chosen from amongst the most respectable male inhabitants of the district. The Landdrost was president of this Board which tried petty civil cases and settled land disputes. This Board saw to the upkeep of the streets and roads and attended to the watercourses and rivers. In short the Board of Heemraden acted as a Divisional Council and advised the government as to the taxes which should be enforced and on matters affecting the welfare of the community in general. Petitions for land in freehold were submitted to the Landdrost and Heemraden for report. At a later date, when the office of Field Cornet was established, this officer had to make an inspection of the land and report thereon. The offices and court of the Landdrost were attached to his official residence called the *Drostdy*, a name applied at one time to the district over which he had jurisdiction.\*

As I devote a section to farm names I will mention only a few of those given out on "loan". But I wish to show here how useful these names are in obtaining an approximate idea of the directions in which the Colony expanded or in which the migratory farmer moved. A copy of each permit to occupy a loan farm was registered with the Secretary of the Council of Policy.<sup>3</sup> This official's duties during last century devolved to

---

\*"The Early and Inferior Courts of Justice at the Cape," by C. Graham Botha, S.A. Law Journal, Vol. XXXVIII.

<sup>3</sup>See "Wildschuts Boek" or "Ordonnantien."

some extent upon the Secretary to Government, later the Under Colonial Secretary. At first these permits describe in vague terms the situation of the loan farms. This makes it difficult to identify the locality. Later on the description is amplified by the addition of a reference to some well-known physical feature of the country, as a river or mountain.<sup>8</sup> This does not always assist in the identification of the place because there are so many of the same name, although situated some distance apart. After the second decade of the 18th century the search becomes a little easier for now it seemed customary to give definite names to the farms themselves.<sup>9</sup> Where the farm or the position can be identified we are able to follow the advance of the farmers and the directions they took.

The movements of the farmers through the country during the 18th century formed one of the stages of the colonization and expansion of the Cape Colony. Up to about the end of the first decade of that century we have the period of settlement which was then followed by the period of dispersion. From the later stage we find the farmers advancing step by step over various areas locating themselves in places where they could find suitable pasturage for their cattle. They followed the river courses and for some time kept along the seaward side of the mountains which were steep on that side. But when once the first pioneers had crossed over by the many passes which traverse them others soon followed. The rivers were unsuited as a means for transporting goods and in the winter time were an obstacle and a danger to those who desired to cross them. But they were most necessary to the farmer for his water supply.

---

<sup>8</sup>*E.g.* "over de Vier en twintig rivieren op de geweene plaats van den Landbouwer Adriaan Wilders," 1716; "te gaan leggen en weyden in 't midden van de Slange Hoek," 1716; "de Brand Valley tusschen de Breede Rivier en Jurrien Radyn," 1721.

<sup>9</sup>"Aan de Vleysbank by de Berg Rivier genaamt het Groot Verlang," 1727.

By the beginning of the 18th century farms were occupied as far as Riebeeck Kasteel and what is now the Tulbagh Basin. Broadly speaking there appears to have been three lines of migration, namely one that went to the north-west, branching off to the north-east, one that crossed the Hottentots Holland range and kept along the south-western and the south-eastern mountain chains following along the coastal line and later on splitting up and working north-east; and the third line pushing across the Karoo keeping along the Nieuwveld. The last two lines appear to have worked slowly towards the border districts of the Eastern Province such as Uitenhage and Graaff-Reinet arriving almost simultaneously at the same line of latitude. I will endeavour to show this in more detail.

Before 1730 farms were occupied in the present districts of the Cape, Stellenbosch, Paarl, Malmesbury, Tulbagh, Worcester, Picquetberg, Swellendam, Caledon, Riversdale, Bredasdorp, Mossel Bay, George, Robertson.. As far as the present town of Clanwilliam and in the lower waters of the Olifants River in the Clanwilliam district "loan" farms had been given out. A few farms were held on the eastern side of the Witsenberg and Cold Bokkeveld Mountains in the present district of Ceres. To the south-eastern portion of the Colony a similar advance had been made. One of the first few farms occupied beyond the mountain barrier was that situated at the Zwartberg, now Caledon. This was granted in 1710 as a freehold place. Along the coast farms were held in Mossel Bay district and one had been "loaned" across the Great Brak River in 1730.

The north-western movement after 1730 and before 1750 was over the mountain barrier running parallel to the west coast. The farmers chose localities in the Bokkeveld occupying places in the districts of Ceres and Calvinia. One lot pushed due north through the van Rhynsdorp district and went into Namaqualand. A farmer had occupied a farm there in 1750 which he called *Leliefontein*, now a Wesleyan Mission Station.

During the forties of the 18th century places were occupied in the *Roggeveld* and gradually the districts of Sutherland and Fraserburg were populated by the Europeans. In the sixties the *Sak River* was the objective. While the Bokkeveld and the Roggeveld were gradually being filled up the movement after 1730 beyond the present district of George was not so pronounced. Few farms were taken out there until about 1754, when the advance was resumed. As early as 1744 a loan farm had been registered at the *Cabeljauws River*, spelt also in 1752 as Cabeljousch and Cabeljauwsch, and in 1754 one at *Assegai Bosch*.<sup>10</sup> Both these places are in the Humansdorp district. But these were outstanding cases and cannot be taken to indicate that the general stream had advanced as far at this time. The fact must not be overlooked also that a number of places were occupied for which no permits were obtained. The line of progress described in these pages has been deduced from the leases which were given out and from the names of farms that can be identified. There is no doubt that there were several farmers who moved beyond the recognised outskirts of the colony, men who were not only anxious to find suitable grazing ground for their cattle but were also desirous to go into the wilds for big game hunting and to barter with the natives. Of these there is no record.

Ensign Beutler, of whom mention will be made further on, remarks in the Journal of his trip in 1752 that the last farm occupied by Europeans was at *Hagelkraal*, near Mossel Bay. This farm had already been granted as a "loan place" in 1729. In 1756 one of the advance pioneers had crossed over the *Attaquas Kloof*, near the present *Robinson's Pass* and settled at *Klippe Drift*. This marked the beginning of the line across this mountain barrier and it spread eastward between here and the Zwartberg. Another branch of this kept due

---

<sup>10</sup>In favour of Martinus van Staden.

north coming to the *Kruis River* "aan de Cango" in 1759. From the latter the *Cango Caves*, discovered in 1780, take their name. Here it spread out to east and west, farmers taking places in the *Langekloof*. Then commenced a movement over the *Zwartberg*, no doubt crossing over the pass of that name and so into the present district of Prince Albert. But the *Cango* was also being reached from over *Cogmans Kloof*, in the Robertson district, for early in the fifties many farms in that direction are described as being "over de *Cogman's Kloof*." In 1760 a description records "*de Cango aan de Doorn Rivier over Cogmanskloof*." The line proceeded eastward through the Prince Albert district on to Willowmore. It reached the *Kariegariver* in 1769 and passed on through the Aberdeen district. Here this route met those lines converging towards Graaff-Reinet and the Eastern Province generally. The course which proceeded through the *Langekloof* and further south reached the *Kromme River* in the sixties and passed on towards the south-western part of Uitenhage and then into the district of Jansenville.

The advance across the great Karoo would appear to have been along the *Hex River*, over the *Hex River Mountains* and also through the *Cogmans Kloof*. The name of the *Hex River* is recorded in 1717 as the *Ekse Rivier*.<sup>11</sup> The farmers were not so ready at first to seek farms in the *Karoo* which was known as the *Droogveld*, the *Dry Country*.<sup>12</sup> This will give us some indication of the reason why they did not do so. When they did cross over the mountain barriers into this part their travel was made easy by the flatness and hardness of the ground, but the earlier pioneers kept along the base of the mountain ranges skirting the *Karoo*. The reference in the 18th century records to this area is rather interesting. A "loan"

<sup>11</sup>Journal 18.1.1717.

<sup>12</sup>In the "Reis van Gouverneur van Plettenberg" in 1778 the Journalist speaks of "het begin van 't Caro of Droogveld."

place given out in 1749 is described as "in 't Karroo;" another one in 1760 as "in de Carro" and in the same year the "Carroos Rivier" is mentioned. In the Journal of van Plettenberg a variety of forms is recorded. For instance, Caro Bergen is also written as Caroos-bergen and Caros Bergen.

We find by the middle of the 18th century the line advancing past the southern parts of the *Klein Roggeveld* and following up towards the *Nieuwveld*. In 1760 a farm described as *Hooyvlaakte in the Carro onder Roggevelde berg* was loaned. This is the present site of the town of *Bedufort West*. A few years later a farm "agter de Roggelandsberg in de *Koup*" was issued. This is an early mention for what is no doubt intended for the present word *Gouph*. This area is referred to on page 35. From this date this area, as well as the *Nieuwveld*, became rapidly occupied. The farmers evidently gave the latter name when they first occupied that area and called it the New Land as distinctive to what they had been accustomed to. Steadily the branches of this line of advance opened until they came in contact with those from the south or south-east and became merged in the general flow towards what is now the Eastern Province. The *Camdeboo* was one of the objectives where farms were issued about 1770.

But the way for the advance of the farmer in the 18th century had been prepared by the explorers of the 17th and 18th centuries. References will be made shortly to some of the more important expeditionary parties that set out with the purpose of opening up trade with the natives, ascertaining the possibilities of the country and adding geographical knowledge. Several attempts were made to reach the Empire of Monomotapa which was reported to be fabulously wealthy. The reasons for sending out these parties and the line of direction they took were mainly economic. Between 1655 and 1667 twelve journeys were undertaken to the northward. Beyond the Olifants River the explorers found nothing but sand, Namaquas and

molesting Bushmen. Three parties which set out between 1682 and 1684 were compelled to return after crossing the Olifants River because of the excessive drought<sup>13</sup> which denied that most essential article—water—to their thirsty draught animals, the oxen. In those far off days oxen were the only means of transport and the drought brought in its wake not only the want of water but also poor and sometimes no pasturage. But Simon van der Stel, on his notable trip in 1685-6, managed to escape these and reached the *Koperberg* in Namaqualand. Here he found copper, but owing to the heavy expenses of working it out of the earth and transport, the idea of making it a paying concern was abandoned.

Not only did economic reasons decide why these men were sent out, and the direction they took, but also the physical features of the country. The north-west appears to have been given a great deal of attention. The mountain barrier running parallel to the west coast made the men keep to the western side. To the south-east parties were also despatched and notable amongst the leaders were Jeronimus Cruse and Isaac Schryver. Here also the reasons were the same. In 1667 Cruse crossed the Hottentots Holland mountains and reached as far as the *Gourits River*. If we study the directions and routes taken by these men we will find that when the farmers of the following century began to choose their farms they did so mostly along those lines which the explorers had traversed. The roads, such as they were in the eighteenth century, also followed the line of the early traveller. During the middle of last century when the first serious attempt was made to construct proper roads these lines became the chief roads or lines of communication.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>13</sup>e.g., Expeditions under Sergeant (afterwards Captain) Olof Bergh.

<sup>14</sup>For further details of early explorations and the making of roads see "Some early Explorations and Travels in South Africa" by C. Graham Botha, being a lecture delivered in March 1916; a series of articles, "Romance of our Roads" in the *Cape Times*, February 1923 onwards, by the writer.

From the Journals of various expeditions sent out into the interior by the Dutch we gather much information as to the period when certain places began to be known. These place names refer to particular localities or the physical features of the country. The first expedition sent out in 1655 under Jan Wintervogel, the first Dutch explorer to go inland, journeyed about fifty miles (Dutch). No place name is mentioned in his report. His party was sent out to try and induce the natives to come to the Castle and enter into an alliance with the authorities. Directions were given to him to look for minerals and he was promised a suitable reward for anything of value which he might discover.<sup>15</sup> Wintervogel was a man of great experience in exploration work; he had been a captain of the Brazilians in Brazil which country he had explored as far as the South Sea and had helped to discover a silver mine. The route this party appears to have been in the direction of the present Malmesbury.

The next party sent out in the same year walked along the sand dunes of False Bay and reached what the leader described as *Caep Vals*<sup>16</sup> the present *Cape Hangklip*<sup>17</sup>, or near it. Two years later another expedition was despatched, it travelled in the direction of Paarl. The men passed *Klapmuts*, Dutch for a riding cap, a sailor's cap, a name which had been given<sup>18</sup> on account of the shape of the eminence which took the form of a *Klapmuts* or cap. They came upon a river which they named *Groot Berg Rivier*, Great Mountain River, which flows into St. Helena Bay and called by the Portuguese the *Santiago River*. When they had passed *Klapmuts* they came upon the river running along the foot of an apparently

---

<sup>15</sup>Resolutions of the Council of Policy, 15.3.1655, and Journal 3.4.1655.

<sup>16</sup>Journal 20.9.1655.

<sup>17</sup>See page 24 re Capes Falso and Hangklip.

<sup>18</sup>Journal of A. Gabbema, 22.10.1657.

impassable chain of mountains and for this reason gave it its name. To their west was a mountain with domes of grey granite which were called *Diamandt ende Peerlbergh*,<sup>19</sup> Diamond and Pearl mountain, because, as the morning sun shed its light upon them they looked like two large gems. These were the two rocks now called *Britannia* and *Victoria*, which are seen on the mountain at the foot of which lies the present town of *Paarl*, a name having reference to the Paarl or Pearl Mountain.

A subsequent party going in the direction of the present Clanwilliam came across a large herd of elephants sporting in a river and on that account gave it the name of *Olifants Rivier*, Elephants River. This was the river called by the Hottentots *Trahamma* which Landdrost Starrenburg writes *Tharahamma*, or Ruige Rivier, Bushy River.<sup>20</sup> It would seem strange if the name of the first Commander of the Cape, Jan van Riebeeck, were not commemorated in our nomenclature. But fortunately we find it in *Riebeeck Kasteel*, the Castle of van Riebeeck, in the present Picquetberg district. It was so named by a party on the 3rd March 1661.<sup>21</sup> The journalist tells us that all kinds of animals were found here, viz, lions, rhinoceroses, zebras, ostriches and hartebeesten. He noted that the mountain to which this name was given was very conspicuous and could be seen from the Cape. It was on this trip that *Klein Berg River*, the Small Mountain River, was named and described as being full of hippopotami. The name of the journalist of this expedition, Pieter van Meerhoff, was commemorated in a round mountain "lying on the mountain range like a castle" which was very distinguishable, being seen at a great distance. This was called *Kasteel Meerhoff* or Meerhoff's Kasteel. As evidence of the change of spelling of place names this is a good example. In

<sup>19</sup>Journal 22.10.1657.

<sup>20</sup>Journal kept by Landdrost Starrenburg; see Valentyn, 92-102

<sup>21</sup>Journal of Pieter van Meerhoff.

1762 it is written as Meerhofdecasteel and in 1791 the name had become Mieren Casteel. To-day in the district of 'Van Rhynsdorp is a farm *Mierhoofd Kasteel*<sup>22</sup> literally, Castle of the Ants Head, but no doubt referring to Meerhoff's Kasteel.

The notable trip of Governor Simon van der Stel in 1685 to the Namaqua Copper Mountains records several existing place names. The diary of this journey was sent to Holland but unfortunately is missing from the records of the Dutch East India Company. A note amongst the papers relating to the journal states that "1691 and 1692 hier al uyt gélight dogh aan wien overhandight onbekent,"<sup>23</sup> (removed in the year 1691 or 1692 but to whom it was handed is unknown.) We are indebted to Rev, François Valentyn for a copy of the journal in his "Beschryving van de Kaap de Goede Hoop." The expedition travelled to the *Koper Berg*, or Copper Mountain through the present districts of Malmesbury, Picquetberg, Clanwilliam and Van Rhynsdorp. The diary records several place names which are of interest to-day. The following are some of these:—*Tygerbergen*, *Tyger* or *Tigerberg*, is shown. The Tigerberg derived its name not because it was the lair of tigers but because of the dark green patches on its surface which were different from the other green herbage on it and looked like the spots on the back of a tiger<sup>24</sup> — really a leopard. *Kuipers Kraal* was the kraal of the Hottentot chief Kuiper and is referred to as early as 1668.<sup>25</sup> These two places are in the Cape district. Passing down the Berg River not far from the present Wellington are the *Obiqua Mountains*. The Obiquas, the diary<sup>26</sup>

<sup>22</sup>See original grants Deeds Office, Clanwilliam, 6.21, fol. 734.

<sup>23</sup>The Hague Archives Ref. Kol. Arch. No. 3999. What is apparently the original is now in Trinity College Library, Dublin. See "The Geographical Journal" for October 1924.

<sup>24</sup>Kolbe, 1.77.

<sup>25</sup>Journal 4.8.1668.

<sup>26</sup>van der Stel's Journal, 29.8.1685.

informs us, not having cattle of their own, stole from their neighbours. They maintained themselves by plundering and stealing from the Hottentots and later on the European farmers. The *Diepe Rivier*, Diep River, a tributary of the *Zoute-Rivier*, Salt River, which flows into Table Bay, and *Sonquasdrift*, are mentioned. \* The *Vier en Twentig Rivieren*, Twenty Four Rivers, was so called because of the number of sources it had. At the *Honigberg*, Honey Mountain, a name recorded in 1676, plenty of honey was found, hence the name; *Kanariberg*, *Uilenberg* *Dassenberg*<sup>27</sup> *Canary*, *Owls*, *Rock Rabbits Mountain* respectively, explain themselves; *Rhenoster Rug* was the place where the carriage of van der Stel was charged by a rhinoceros, *Elands Kraal* where an eland weighing 1000 lbs. (Dutch)<sup>28</sup> was shot and *Misverstand Drift* (Malmesbury district) was where the party crossed the Berg. The present name of *Picquetberg* we find referred to as *Piketbergen* and are told that when Mr. Goske was at war with the Gonjemans, they were merry on the mountain and set pickets on it and thus gave it the name.<sup>29</sup> In 1701 and in 1765 it is spelt *Picquetberg*.<sup>30</sup> A picket or picquet is a small body of troops sent out to watch for the enemy or held ready in quarters, an outpost. In after years when the origin had become unknown the name *Piquetberg* was used as referring to the card game.<sup>31</sup> Barrow<sup>32</sup> spells it *Picquetberg* and refers to it as a clump of mountains probably so named from their position in front of the great chain.<sup>33</sup> Further names recorded in the diary are *De Grootte Doornbosch Rivier*,<sup>34</sup> Great Thorn Bush

<sup>27</sup>Mentioned in Journal of O. Bergh, 1682.

<sup>28</sup>2 lbs. Dutch = 100 lbs. English.

<sup>29</sup>Journal, 5.9.1685.

<sup>30</sup>Journal 25.10.1701.

<sup>31</sup>"Reizen in Zuid Afrika" Godée Molsbergen, 1.150.

<sup>32</sup>Barrow, 1.323.

<sup>33</sup>i.e., Olifants Rivier Mountains.

<sup>34</sup>The Doornbosch Rivier is mentioned in an expedition undertaken in 1682.

River, *De Kleine Doornbosch Rivier*, *Zand Rivier* called by the natives *Touse*, now the *Buffels* or *Buffalo River*. On the charts of this expedition it is marked *Sant Rivier* or, as called by the Hottentots, *Tausi* which in Dutch is *Buffels Rivier* (Chart M 78), or as called by the Natives *Koussie River*. On his return journey he came to this river again and the journalist wrote that it was called *Touse* by the natives because they had found two buffels or *Touse* in the river so that the proper name should be *Buffels River*. To the Dutch, he recorded, it was known as *Zand Rivier*.

In 1699 Governor Willem Adriaan van der Stel in company of several officials made a tour inland to inspect the outposts of the Company. He came to what is now the Tulbagh Basin, first seen by Europeans in 1658. To this area he gave the name of *'t Land van Waveren*<sup>35</sup> in honour of an Amsterdam family with which he was connected. This was the former name by which Tulbagh was known. The range of mountains enclosing the basin on the eastern side he called the *Witsenberg*,<sup>35</sup> in honour of Nicolaas Witsen, Burgomaster of Amsterdam and a Director of the Dutch East India Company. The journal kept in 1761 of Captain Hendrik Hop's trip to Namaqualand has added several names which still exist. *Het Kruis*, Dutch *Kruis*, a Cross, *Berg Vallei*, *Lange Vallei* and *Brandenburg* (farms with these names were occupied in 1725, 1728 and 1753 respectively), all in the present district of Clanwilliam; *Heeren Logement*,<sup>36</sup> Gentleman's Inn or Hotel, (occupied as a farm in 1732), *Koekenaap* or *Bakoven* in the Van Rhynsdorp district are also recorded.

Before the close of the 17th century several parties to the south-east of the Colony have recorded place names. In 1667

\*Letter 1.3.1700 to XVII.

<sup>36</sup>Here is an interesting cave on the rocks of which are engraved names and initials of early travellers.

that intrepid traveller, Jeronimus Cruse, with some men proceeded to Mossel Bay over the Hottentots Holland range. He came in touch with a Hottentot tribe, the Gouriquas, sometimes found spelt as Gouri and Gauri, from which the *Gourits River* derives its name.<sup>37</sup> This soldier, for he became Lieutenant of the Garrison,<sup>38</sup> had been on many bartering expeditions and in 1668 the authorities sent a party under his guidance by boat to Mossel Bay with instructions to march over land to the Castle. Between Mossel Bay and George was a Hottentot tribe called the Attaquas<sup>39</sup> from which the *Attaqua Mountains* derives its name. This was the first time these people had been visited by the Dutch. Next year Cruse went on a visit to other tribes, the Obiquas and the Hessequas. Cruse noted that he passed the *Palmiet River*, on the eastern side of the Hottentots Holland range. This river the natives called *Koutema* or *Slange River*, Dutch *Slang*, a *snake*.<sup>39</sup> He also passed the *Rivier Sonder Endt*, River Sonder End, the endless river. An official sent out in 1712 to examine the forests along this river says that it probably received this name "omdat er een oneyndig getal riviertjes invloegen, het hiet hier te lande al rivier, al is 't maar een waterloop in de regentydt, daar men in den drogen kan doorgaan."<sup>40</sup> Later writers, such as Lichtenstein, say that the name was given by the persons who discovered it because they found it a very great labour to trace it to its source. But Burchell says that "the course of the river is by no means of such length as to justify the name it bears." Probably the writer of 1712 was nearer the mark when he says that it has an endless number of small rivers flowing into it. This river was called *Kanna Kam Kanna* by the Hottentots.<sup>41</sup>

<sup>37</sup>Letter 20.1.1668, to XVII.

<sup>38</sup>Journal 23.11.1668.

<sup>39</sup>Dagverhaal van Baas Thuynier Jan Hartogh, 1707.

<sup>40</sup>Bylagen, 1725, p. 28.

<sup>41</sup>Hartogh's Journal, 1707.

Between 1676 and 1689 there were two trading expeditions sent out to the eastward which passed a number of places that still exist. The Hessequa tribe, which lived in the Swellendam district, invited the Dutch to send their men to trade with them. In 1676 Jan Lourens Visser and some Company's men were sent out. He was Superintendent of the Company's cattle post at Hottentots-Holland and had often crossed over the mountain for cattle barter. He passed through the present sites of Caledon and Swellendam and reached the *Buffeljagts River*. Some of the names recorded<sup>42</sup> are *Cnoflocks Kraal*, *Swarte River*, referred to as *Doggha Kamma*, by the Hottentots, *Kalabas Kraal* and *Tygerhoek*, all in the Caledon district. Here they found several kraals of the Soeswas<sup>43</sup>. They passed *Hessequashloof* called *Gashî Gamha*, by the natives, *Brede River*, the *Synna* of the Hottentots, the *Klippige River*, *Qualsberg's Casteel*. At *Buffelsjagts River* Visser asked the Hessequas to meet him at *Oliphants River* to barter their cattle. This is probably the small river which flows into the River Sonder End. It could not have referred to the *Olifants River* to the eastward and which flows into the Gourits River as it is to the west of Hessequas Kloof. On the return journey the following names are recorded, *Backley Plaats*<sup>44</sup> (near Swellendam) *Droogekraal*, *Kleyne River*, *Copere Kraal*, and *Hoogenwagen Kraal*, *Eselsjagt* and *Caffer Kuils Rivers*. The second last name is to be found in Caledon. The Kaffir Kuils River he mentions does not seem to refer to the river between the Breede and Gourits Rivers which would be more eastward than he went.

Another native tribe, the Inquas, living beyond the Outeniqua tribe, also invited the Dutch to trade with them. Accordingly.

<sup>42</sup>Journal, 20.10.1676.

<sup>43</sup>Hartogh's Journal, 1707.

<sup>44</sup>or *Backeley Plaats*.

in 1689 an expedition under Ensign Isaac Schryver was despatched. This expedition passed over the present sites of Caledon, Swellendam and Heidelberg and got as far as the present Oudtshoorn. In addition to some of the names mentioned on the journey by Visser we find *Hout Hoek*, now *Houwhoek*, *Botte River*, now *Bot River*, *Ganse Kraal*, *Drooge River*, named *Ouhamma* by the natives, *Duyvenhoks River*, *Gauris* (the *Gourits River*). The river Gourits is found spelt in a variety of ways. In Schryver's journal of 1689 it is Gauris, the journal of 1718<sup>45</sup> speaks of the Gaurits Hottentots, in 1713 we find it as Gouwers and in 1732 as Gouris, Gouwris and Gouwrits. In 1744 and by Beutler 1752 it is Gourits which form appears in a journal of 1768 as well as Gouris. They passed through the Riversdale, Mossel Bay and George districts. The *Kamnasy* (Kammanassie) *River*, so called by the natives, and the *Oliphants River* or *Thuata* marked on the official map of 1895 as Olifants River, were recorded. After passing the Oliphants the journalist records several place names which are difficult to identify or do not exist any longer. They encamped at a place of the Hottentots *Nauhoti* or Roodsand and then came to a flat kloof called by the natives *Quanti*, i.e., *Dagkloof* (Dagkloof) and later on to *Naudau* or *Witte Kloov*. Where the Hottentot chief had his kraal was called *Udigauga* and the river *Kalniga* which Molsbergen<sup>46</sup> identifies as the Kariega River. Two of the above names, *Bot River* and *Houw Hoek*, require more explanation.

The present name of *Bot River* is found in various forms of spelling before the end of the 17th century. One of the earliest forms is *Botter River*, mentioned in the Journal of the 25th November, 1672. In the year 1725 it is found as

o

<sup>45</sup> 5.9.1718.

<sup>46</sup>Molsbergen, "Relzen," 3.107. See Index.

*Botte River*<sup>47</sup> and on a chart of 1682 as *Boter River*, the same form as recorded a century later. It is thus spelt as Bot, Boter, Botte and Botter River. A Journalist of 1712<sup>48</sup> who calls it Botter River, says it owes its name to the fact that in earlier times the Hottentots had their kraals here because the pasturage was very good. The Cape butter bartefers knew of this place and for a piece of tobacco arrack, copper, and glass beads got their butter casks filled. In its present form of Bot River, it is found mentioned in 1707.<sup>49</sup>

The name of *Houw Hoek* appears in a variety of forms. It is found as *Houhoek*, *Houthoek* and *Houwhoek* and different meanings of its origin are given. The earliest travellers over this difficult piece of road will, I think, give us a better indication of the forms of spelling and the reasons for naming it so. The Journalist of 1712 referred to above has called it *Houthoek*, Dutch *Hout*, wood, because he says there was a scarcity of wood there. Others again, he informs us, called it *Houwhoek* (the present form), because after a long march they would rest there, (om dat se na een lange mars aldaar te houw quamen). Another version is given in 1725 when the name is spelt as *Houhoek* "Om deselfs lankwyligen en steylen opgang" (because of its tedious and steep ascent). On Colonel Robert Gordon's map of 1780 he has marked Houhoeck Bergen. The last two forms of the name seem to be the more likely acceptance of the spelling. In the latter form the interjection *Hou* stay! hold! would be applicable to the nature of the road. A tedious climb up a steep ascent would necessarily make the travellers halt on the summit to allow their animals to recover themselves.

---

<sup>47</sup>Journal of Bergh and Rhenius. Attestation 1724-5.

<sup>48</sup>Bylagen, 1725.

<sup>49</sup>Hartogh's Journal, 1707.

The Journal describing the expedition of Ensign August Fredrik Beutler in 1752<sup>50</sup> to the Kei River contains a number of river names. Many of these cannot be identified to-day. He went over the Hottentots Holland Kloof along the route to Mossel Bay, which by this time was well known. After he crossed the *Bracke River*, Dutch *Brah*, saltish, he reached *Hagel Kraal*, the first farm inhabited by Europeans. He took three days to traverse the mountains at *Attaquas Kloof*, near Robinson's Pass. This was accomplished with great difficulty, the wagons had to be steadied with ropes for fear that they would topple over. Some of the many river names noted in Beutler's Journal still exist. The *Saffraan*, Dutch for saffron, and the *Moeras*, named because of the boggy nature of the land, were passed. Although the names are not mentioned and in other cases rivers are described only as, "een klyn lopend riviertje," Beutler's party, must have forded the *Kandelaars* and *Groot Doorn Rivers*. They next came to the *Klip Bank's River*, now the *Klip River*, and after that to *Muys Kraal* at the present *Doorn River*. Here says the journalist began the *Cannaland*. Passing over the *Lange Kloof River*, now the *Brah River*, with its clean and clear water, they arrived at the so called *Riet Vallei* on the banks of another river. The next river was the *Matjes*, still so named. From the *Attaquas Kloof* to here the country is described as being mostly flat but stony and covered with rhenoster bushes or little grass. Here ended the area called *Cannaland*. The canna plant, the record tells us, grew in great abundance here and was used by the Hottentots as a purgative. It looked like the foliage of a Hottentot's fig but was smaller and bore a yellow flower.

Travelling eastward Beutler came to *Ganse Kraal* and then to two small streams one of which was called the *Modder River*.

---

"Reis van den Vaandrig Beutler." Theal "Belangryke Historische Dokumenten." No. 2, 1896.

reaching the *Diep River*, a name that has been retained. <sup>6</sup> At a tributary of the Diep River a quacha, now written quaggā, was shot and on that account was called *Quacha River*. This is one of the many illustrations how places received their names. The quagga is striped like a zebra and so named onomatopoeically, the word being an imitation of the peculiar cry of that animal. Forging the *Keurbooms River*, the *Wolvēkraal*, names still existing, was the next camping ground. The keurboom is a tree that grows along river courses or in damp places, and bears a light purple flower. After the *Lange Riet Vallei River*, probably near Avontuur, Beutler's party reached the *Moorden-uars River*. The latter had been so named because a few years previously the Hottentots had murdered a European deserter. The party had now been travelling through the Lange Kloof and had followed the course of the *Kromme River* which they named and came to *Essenbosch* in the present district of Humansdorp. Towards the south-east they crossed the *Lēuwenbosch* and *Zeehoek Rivers* and marched north-east arriving at the mouth of the *Kabeljauws River*.

The journey through the Lange Kloof, (Uniondale district) took some days and at the mouth of the *Cabeljousch River* (Cabeljauws) Beutler erected a beacon bearing the monogram of the Dutch East India Company. In recording the *Gamtousch River* (*Gamtoos River*) the journalist writes of the Hottentot tribe *Gamtausch Natie*. Kolbe, in one of the maps of his books, has also set down the Chamtouers Natie and the official journal speaks of the Gamtourland.<sup>51</sup> In 1765 the river appears as Gamto's. After fording the *Kromme River*, Dutch *Krom*, crooked, referring no doubt to the numerous bends of the stream, the *Galgenbosch* was passed. This place name further illustrates the method of deriving our nomenclature. The word is derived from the Dutch *Galg*, gallows and *Bosch*, a forest.

---

<sup>51</sup>11.3.1710.

On one of the trees in the forest here the travellers saw several names carved out, above which was the figure of a gallows, cut out by some subsequent elephant hunter.

Pushing forward, he traversed a large valley which the Hottentots called *Cracha Camma* (*Kragga Kamma*). The next place reached was *Van Stadens River*, evidently called after a member of that name who had occupied a loan place there,<sup>52</sup> and then the *Swartekops River* (*Zwartkops*). On the *Bushmans River* a place was passed called by the Hottentots *Koernoe*, meaning small forest, now *Coerney*. The travellers, however, named it *Hoender Craal*, on account of the number of guinea fowls seen there. On an eminence at the mouth of a river, (near Port Elizabeth) Beutler erected the usual beacon as a sign of possession by the Company. This river is known as the *Baakcns*, Dutch *Baaken*, a beacon, and has reference to the one put up in 1752. Proceeding eastward the following rivers are recorded, *Zondaags* (*Sundays*), *Visch* (*Fish*), *Chys Chamma* (*Keiskamma*) called so by the Kaffirs and Hottentots because they looked upon this as the boundary between them, *Kauka*, which the journalist says meant by the Kaffirs the *Buffels*, *Goenoebe* (*Gonubie*), and the *Kei*, which we are told in the record means *Sand River*. Pettman derives the name *Keiskamma* from the Hottentot *keisa*, glistening, shining and *gami* (*kamma*) water.

On the homeward march, which took them first in a north-westerly and then in a south-westerly direction, the rivers crossed were the *Tyumie*, *Katte* (*Kat*) from Dutch *Kat* a cat, *Koonap*, *Gomee* or *Baviaans*, Dutch *Baviaan*, a baboon, *Tarka* or *Vrouwen*, Dutch *Vrouw*, a woman, or maiden, and the *Visch*. Along the latter, native rock paintings were seen. In the present Riversdale district they passed up *Soetmelks Rivier*, Sweet-

<sup>52</sup>In 1744 Marthinus van Staden had occupied a farm at the Kabeljauws River and probably had pushed further afield since then.

milk River. The *Leeuwen River* in the present Humansdorp district was crossed which Beutler says the Hottentots called *Chammaga*.

In 1778 Governor van Plettenberg made a trip to the Eastern Province. The diary of his journey contains the names of farms, rivers and mountains and brings us to place names that had been known for some time before that period. The name of *Goudini* is mentioned, this is evidently of Hottentot origin. It is spelt in the diary as *Gaudiene* but in 1751 as *Goudine*. When travelling between the Hex River Mountains the party passed along the road called *Candauw*. This may evidently be the same name by which the Hottentots called the pathway over the Hottentots Holland Range, namely *Gantouw* i.e., the Elands Pat q.v. *De Straat*, The Street, not far from the present Triangle Railway Station, was named on account of its broadness and evenness. *Touws River* and *Pietermeintjes Fontein* are mentioned. Along the route on the Kafoo, to the present Prince Albert, which was then called *Queek Vallei*, were passed *Buffels River*, *Deephka* or *Brahke River*, probably the *Dwyhka* is meant, *Gamka* or *Lions River*, from the Hottentot word *Xami* a lion, and the *Zwartbergen*, Black Mountains were passed. In the present Willowmore district the *Beeren Valley* is mentioned. The *Kariga* (*Kariega*) also called the *the Buffels*, in reference to which Pettman points out that the native name has survived, and the *Karee Rivers*, in the Aberdeen district, were crossed. In the Graaff-Reinet district the Governor came to the *Camdebo* and *Swarte Rivers*. The locality, the *Camdebo*, from which the *Camdebo River* takes its name, was inhabited by Bushmen. According to Stow the word means Green Elevations. Some spell it with one o and others with two oo's. Stow spells it as *Camdeboo*. In permits issued for a "loan" farm in 1770, one of the earliest references to this place and the mountain near by, it is found as *Candabo*,

Camdaboos and Camdebo. In the instructions issued on the 20th June 1797 to the Landdrost of Graaff-Reinet it is referred to as Camdebo, the form in which it is found in van Plettenberg's diary. It appears that the early writers when giving the possessive case added another o. For instance, in 1770 farms are described as "onder de Canteboosberg,," "aan de Kamdeboosberg" and "onder de Camtoboos Bergh."

The *Sneeuwbergen* (literally Snow Mountains) were evidently crossed at what is marked *Cephanjes Poort* on the official map of 1895, no doubt a corruption of the word Champagne as the diarist mentions that they passed the Champagne Poorts Rivier. This is now probably the Seacow River. On the other side was *Plettenbergs Rivier* now the *Zeekoe* or *Seacow*, i.e., Hippopotamus. In the present Hanover district are two place names which recall this trip. *Gordons Fontein*, is called after Colonel Robert Jacob Gordon, who accompanied van Plettenberg. *Schuil Hoek*, Dutch for hiding place, and from which the mountain takes its name, is mentioned in the journal. Not far from the *Zeekoe River* and from the present site of Colesberg van Plettenberg put up a stone beacon with the year 1778, the Company's monogram, his arms and name engraved thereon. This marked the furthest point reached and the north-eastern limits of the Colony.

Barrow, who travelled through the country in 1798, tells us that the Bushmen had thrown down and broken in pieces the Governor's monument, but the place retained the name of the Edel Heer's Baaken. The large hole of the river, upon the bank of which it stood, bore the name of *Plettenberg's Gat*.<sup>53</sup> The remains of this beacon are in the South African Museum. The *Eerste Poort* and *Tweede Poort*, along the *Zeekoe River*, were passed and at the first place Barrow says Colonel Gordon met with an accident

---

<sup>53</sup>Barrow, 1-210.

by his horse falling in a deep hole which the Bushmen had prepared for trapping hippopotami.

The travellers returned over the Sneeuwbergen and stopped at a place not far from the present site of Graaff-Reinet, having crossed the *Melk* and *Vogel* and then the *Blye* (*Blyde* — Dutch *Bly*, Glad) Rivers. Passing through the present site of Pearston they reached *Bruintjes Hoogte* and from here they journeyed towards the present site of *Somerset East*.

The early form in which *Bruintjes Hoogte* is recorded is in 1770, when a farm was issued "aan de Kamdeboosberg aan de Bruynshoogte." This latter is strangely enough written by Stow<sup>64</sup> as *De Bruyn's Hoogte* whilst in the Instructions of 1797 to the Landdrost it is referred to in its present form.

Keeping in a southward direction they came to a farm *Camdaga* (*Commadagga*) and passed the *Bosjesmans Rivier* (*Bushman's River*) and reached *Zwartkops*. The route was followed through the present sites of *Humansdorp*, *Haarlem* and *Avontuur*, and the party came to *De Nysna* (*Knysna*). The following place names are mentioned before *Knysna* was reached, *Schonenberg* (marked on 1895 map as *Schoon Berg*) *Pisangs Rivier*, *Duivels Kop* (in the *Outinequa Mountains*), *Kleine Hooge Kraal*, *Nounka* or *Zwarte River*, *Tsoa* or *Witte River*, *Buffels Vermaak*, *Melkhoute Kraal*.

It was on this trip that van Plettenberg called the bay, not far from *Knysna*, *Plettenberg Bay*, and erected a stone slab on which was carved his arms, the monogram of the Company, and the fact that he had put it up. The diary says that this bay had hitherto no final name but had been arbitrarily referred to in the Company's records as "Baay Content, de Bay Angola, de Keurbooms Riviers- en de Pisangs riviers Baay." It was decided then once and for all to give it the 'Governor's

---

<sup>64</sup> page 156.

name. It is interesting to note that on the official map of the Colony issued in 1895 appears Formosa or Plettenbergs Bay.

Up to the time of the first British occupation in 1795 there were only four towns, *Cape Town*, *Stellenbosch*, *Swellendam* and *Graaff-Reinet*. The first was not always known by this designation. Generally we find it referred to before the close of the 17th century as *Cabo de Boa Esperance* and *Cabo de Bonne Esperance*. A change seems to have been made about 1686 when it was designated as *Cabo de Goede Hoop*.<sup>55</sup> This reference also included the small town growing up in Table Valley. In course of time it was known by the early colonists as *Cabo* or *De Caab*, The Cape. To-day many country people speak of going to *De Kaap* and a resident of this city or the Peninsula is referred to as a *Kapenaar*. It is interesting to note how the Portuguese name *Cabo*, a Cape, was retained by the early Dutch.

It was during the last quarter of the 18th century that we find it designated as Cape Town by strangers. Several English prisoners of war during 1781-1782 addressed their letters to the government as from Cape Town. A letter written in 1773 and one dated the 29th September 1778 by Sir Eyre Coote, of Indian fame, are likewise headed.

Governor Simon van der Stel after his arrival in 1679 was not long in making himself acquainted with the country inland. He visited the station at Hottentots Holland and passed on towards the mountains to the north-east. He came to a valley through which a clear stream flowed and at one point divided into two, only to join each other farther down, thus forming an island of some size. The island was thickly wooded with fine trees. He was charmed with the whole scenery and decided to give this spot a name which would perpetuate his own in

---

<sup>55</sup>See Letters Received and Plakaat Boek.

connection with this forest. He called it *Stellenbosch*,<sup>56</sup> derived from *Stel* and *bosch*, a wood or forest.<sup>57</sup> Shortly after farmers were tilling the soil about here. In 1682 van der Stel appointed a Board of Heemraden to decide trivial disputes among the burghers of this new district. These men were chosen from among the leading inhabitants and received no salaries as the position was an honorary one. Three years later a Landdrost or Magistrate was appointed to the district to preside over this Board and to represent the Government. His functions were both judicial and administrative. The area which the present district of Stellenbosch covers is exceedingly small compared to what it was in the 18th century. For many years after its establishment it included the whole of the country beyond the Cape Peninsula, but as new districts were formed portions were cut off from it.

The next town which was formed, the third oldest in the Colony, was *Swellendam*. In 1744 four Heemraden were appointed to form a court of justice for the inhabitants living beyond the Breede River. An assistant Landdrost, under the Landdrost of Stellenbosch, was appointed. In the following year in August, he was raised to the rank of Landdrost and appointed to govern over the new magisterial district termed the "Verre afgelegen districtien," the far off lying districts. In 1746 a site was chosen for his Drostdy or residency which included the court house and goal. It was upon the *Coornlands River*<sup>58</sup> and in 1747 the Government decided that the district should be called *Swellendam*,<sup>59</sup> in honour of the Governor Hendrik Swellengrebel and his wife, whose maiden name was ten Damme. The seat of

---

<sup>56</sup>Journal, 8.11.1679.

<sup>57</sup>This should settle the erroneous idea that the second part of the name — *Bosch* — was that of van der Stel's wife's maiden name, which was Johanna Six.

<sup>58</sup>The Coornlands River mentioned in Beutler's Journal of his trip in 1752.

<sup>59</sup>Resolutions 26.10.1747.

magistracy took its name from the district. For nearly fifty years' after there were only the three districts where courts of law were established. The Landdrost of Swellendam had under his jurisdiction a very large area of country towards the eastern part of the Colony. In 1778 the farmers residing on the eastern frontier petitioned the Government for the establishment of a court of justice and a church in their part of the colony. The Governor, Baron van Plettenberg, resolved to visit that part and ascertain for himself the condition of affairs as a report had been made of the numerous depredations by the Bushmen there.

It was found that the farmers at the Sneeuwberg had suffered severely from this and they complained that it took them several weeks to reach a court or a church. It was not, however, until 1785 that a Landdrost was appointed, and a court of Heemraden established. The new Landdrost was instructed to make a tour along the border and select a suitable site for his drostdy. This he chose at the site of the present *Graaff-Reinet* which was called in honour of the then Governor, Cornelis Jacob van der Graaff, and, as in the case of Swellendam, of his wife, whose maiden name was Reinet. The site was two farms near the source of the Sundays River then occupied by a farmer Dirk Coetsee. In 1792 a clergyman and church officers were appointed to this new place. In the district, which embraced immense territory, the main pursuit of the farmers was that of cattle breeding. The history of the people of this area for many years after was that of a struggle for existence against the inroads of the Bushmen who raided the farms and murdered the Europeans.

These three country town names were the only ones given during the years of the first Dutch occupation. It will be observed that they commemorated the names of Governors and in two cases that of their wives as well. It was during the second Dutch occupation of the Colony, 1803 to 1806, that two further town

names were added. These were *Uitenhage* and *Tulbagh*.<sup>60</sup> Commissioner-General J. A. de Mist had been sent out by the Batavian Republic to take over the Cape from the British in terms of the Treaty of Amiens, which he did in March 1803. The following year he made a tour through the country and from his observations was convinced that more magistracies were necessary for the well being and order of the country. The districts of Stellenbosch and Graaff-Reinet were too large in size and it was almost impossible for the Landdrost to exercise proper supervision over these areas. He decided that at least two new districts should be created. From the district of Graaff-Reinet he cut off certain field cornetcies, the Zwarte Ruggens, Brintjes Hoogte, Zuurveld, Bushman's River and Zwartkops River. It was in the area which these field cornetcies comprised that the most turbulent farmers resided who had caused a good deal of trouble a few years before and also in which the Kaffirs had caused many depredations. To this new district the Dutch Governor, General Jan Willem Janssens, shortly after gave the name of *Uitenhage* in honour of the Commissioner-General. This was an old family name of de Mist who was permitted in 1817 by the King of the Netherlands to assume the name of *Uitenhage de Mist*. A copy of the diploma authorising this was sent the following year by de Mist to the Cape with the request that it be placed amongst the *Uitenhage Archives*.<sup>60</sup> The town was laid out on the site of the farm of the widow Elizabeth Scheepers.

In the same year, 1804, that *Uitenhage* was named another district was created by cutting off a portion of the district of Stellenbosch. To this new area the name of *Tulbagh* was given in honour of the memory of a former Cape Governor, Ryk Tulbagh, who had been held in high esteem by the colonists. It was at first proposed that Jan Dissel's Vlei, where the 'village of

---

<sup>60</sup>Letter in Colonial Office Archives.

Clanwilliam was built a few years afterwards, should be the site of the new drostdy. But against this there was an adverse report owing to that part being cut off from the eastern part of the district by a very rugged tract of land. The locality chosen for the seat of magistracy was instead the farm *Rietvlei*, belonging to Hercules du Pre, close to the church at *Roodezand*, Red Sand, so called on account of the red sandy soil. *Roodezand* is recorded in the journal of the 18th March, 1701.

The following are some names given during the Dutch days. *Simons Bay* called after Governor Simon van der Stel when he made a survey of it and *False Bay* in 1687. It had been previously known as *Isselstein Bay*, so named after a Dutch East Indianman, which called here in 1671.<sup>61</sup> An interesting chart of the coast and land in this vicinity was made on the occasion. It was not until 1742 that *Simons Bay* became a port of call from which date ships were ordered to sail into it between the months of May and August. At this time of the year the north-west winds caused a great deal of damage to the shipping in *Table Bay*. *Camps Bay* derived its origin from one von *Camptz* or *Kamptz* of *Mecklenberg* who arrived at the Cape as a young sailor. The place had been the farm of J. J. L. *Wernich* and was called *Ravensteyn*, but in 1779 von *Camptz* married *Wernich's* widow and so became possessed of the estate. During the war between England and Holland shortly after, von *Camptz* was in Europe and the place became the scene of military activity. Trenches were thrown up and a battery erected; the road leading to Cape Town was broken up for military purposes. Thus, when he returned to the Cape he found his farm much damaged and offered it in 1786 to the Government for 10,000 rixdollars, about £2,000.<sup>62</sup> For several years after it was known as *De Baai van Von Camptz*. *Blaauwberg*, referred

<sup>61</sup>Journal, 30.12.1671.

<sup>62</sup>Requesten, 1786.

to as *Blaauwenberg*, Dutch *Blaauw*, blue, to the east of Robben Island, derived its name from the fact that from the seaward it appeared blue.<sup>63</sup> From it *Blaauwberg Strand* received its name which is found in the Journal of 1728.<sup>64</sup> On the plain to the north side of the hill the battle between the British and Dutch troops was fought in 1806 and consequently became known as the Battle of Blaauwberg or Blueberg.

*Hout Bay* dates back to 1652<sup>65</sup> and was named in consequence of the forests in the kloofs, the trees being the finest in the world and contained as long and thick spars as one could wish to have.<sup>66</sup> The sandy cove seen from the top of the climb from Cape Town side to Hout Bay and called *Sand Bay* was named in 1657<sup>67</sup> by the Dutch as *de Santbaaytjen*, the Little Sand Bay. *Slarghōp Point*, Dutch, *Slanghōp*, Snake head, to the south of Hout Bay, owes its name no doubt to the cattle post of that name mentioned in 1687. *Oude Schip*, Old Ship, to the north of the same recalls the wreck of some Dutch East Indiaman. *Smitswinkēl Bay*, Dutch for smithy, is a name found in 1744, but marked in Gordon's chart of 1780 as *Patientie Baai*. One wonders whether the two rocks marked in Johannes van Keulen's map off Cape Point as "recently discovered," *Blaasbalg*, bellows, and *Aanbeeld*, anvil, by which they are still known, have any connection with the previous one mentioned. Stavorinus has them marked as such on his map but the 1687 chart of van der Stel has two places off Cape Point as *Penguin Islands*. In the latter chart the present *Kalk Bay*, Dutch *Kalk*, lime, is noted<sup>68</sup> as *Kalk-Baai*. Lime Bay. It was noted at that time as a good fishing place. *Vishoek*, Dutch *Vis*, fish, *Hoek*, corner, is mentioned in 1725.<sup>69</sup>

---

<sup>63</sup>Kolbe 1.78.

<sup>64</sup>16.5.1728.

<sup>65</sup>Journal, 31.12.1652.

<sup>66</sup>Journal, 29.7.1653.

<sup>67</sup>Journal, 22.27.3.1657.

<sup>68</sup>*Ibid*, 19.8.1725.

*Rogge Bay*, near to the Corporation Power Station, was in reality once a small bay or cove, but in 1722 a great storm visited Table Bay, and the journal records that Rogge Bay "which in the great storm of three years ago had been half silted up, was now silted up altogether, and entirely obliterated."<sup>69</sup> The Company's boats landed at *Rogge* or *Roche Bay*; the former being mentioned in 1665.<sup>70</sup> The latter is found so spelt in 1695, and is the French for a rock. In the early days sharp rocks jutted out in the sea at this place hence no doubt the name. There is a fish, the thornback, called a *Rog* by the Dutch, found spelt *Roch* in an archaic form. Does it perhaps refer to this?

*Mouille Point* reminds us of the attempt in 1743 to construct a mole or breakwater in Table Bay. This mole, though greatly reduced in course of time by the sea, can still be seen in the reef like prominence jutting from the place where the old lighthouse stood. *Robben Island*, has already been referred to.<sup>71</sup> It was visited in 1591 by Admiral George Raymond and in 1601 by Joris van Spilbergen, who called it *Cornelia Island*. In van Riebeeck's time it was known by its present name; the Dutch used it as a penal settlement. Here convicts, Europeans and slaves, served out long terms of imprisonment. Their time was occupied in quarrying and dressing the blue stone used for headstones and tiling the stoeps and floors of the Cape Town dwellings. Occasionally lunatics were placed on the island<sup>72</sup> "to pass the remainder of their wretched days amongst felons and convicts."<sup>73</sup> The large rock off the island known in 1656<sup>74</sup> as *de Walvis*, Dutch for a whale, is the name it still bears.

---

<sup>69</sup>Journal, 17.6.1722.

<sup>70</sup>*Rogge Bhguytje*, Journal 88.1665.

<sup>71</sup>p. 16.

<sup>72</sup>Resolutions 11.12.1725.

<sup>73</sup>Letter in 1812 from Sir John Cradock.

<sup>74</sup>Journal, 25.2.1656.

*Noah's Ark*, near Simons Town, is marked on Stavorinus' map, and *Roman Rock*, perhaps referring to the quantity of Roman fish which could be caught near by, is marked as Romons Klip in 1730,<sup>75</sup> and what is now *Seal Island* was marked in 1687 as *Malagas Eiland*. *Struys Bay* to the east of Agulhas is mentioned in 1673.<sup>76</sup> In the previous year the last name is written as *Vogel Struys Bay* — (Ostrich Bay). e

*Devils Peak*, named *Herbert's Mount* by Commodore Fitzherbert in 1620, was called by the early Dutch *De Windberg*<sup>77</sup> Dutch *wind*, wind, a very appropriate name indeed for the south-east wind sweeps with fury round this portion of the mountain. In Kolbe<sup>78</sup> we find the introduction to its present form for he describes it as *De Wind of Duivels Berg*, Dutch *Duivel* devil; Stavorinus calls it *Duivels Klip*, Devils Rock and later on we find it as *Duivels Kop*. *Lions Head* at a distance looks like a lion couchant and this gave the origin of its name says Kolbe.<sup>79</sup> The English in 1620 called it "Ye Sugar Loaf" on account of its shape, but the Dutch gave it the name *Leeuwen Berg Kop*. The *Twelve Apostles*, along Camps Bay, were known by the early Dutch as *De Gevelbergen*, The Gable Mountains,<sup>80</sup> *Hout Bay Kloof* as *De Pas*, the Pass, and *Kloof Nek* as *De Kloof*. *Little Lions Head*, near Hout Bay, the Dutch gave the name of *Zuycherbroot*,<sup>81</sup> or Sugar Loaf, a name which the English had applied to Lions Head which it somewhat resembled. The *Tigerberg* is shown in 1657 as "t gevleckte luperts gebergte" — the spotted leopard mountain, in another chart of the same year as "lupaerts berghen" — leopard mountains. In 1660 it is

<sup>75</sup>Chart No. 24.

<sup>76</sup>Journal 25.12.1673.

<sup>77</sup>Journal 15.6.1659.

<sup>78</sup>Kolbe 1.86.

<sup>79</sup>Kolbe 1.83, which he also ascribes to Pere Tachard.

<sup>80</sup>Journal 27.7.1657.

<sup>81</sup>*Ibid* 27.3.1657.

referred to as *Tygersbergh* which Valentyn says was so named on account of the dark or brown patches which made it differ from all other mountains and not because it was the lair of wild tigers. From this mountain "Tyger-Valey" received its name and is mentioned in Cruse's expedition of 1669.

The well-known place *Groote Schuur*, the residence of the Prime Minister when at the Cape, was the place where van Riebeeck built "*De Schuur*" or granary in 1657.<sup>82</sup> Joris van Spilbergen in 1601 called *Salt River*, the *Jacqueline* but in 1652 it is referred to by the Dutch meaning of the first name, *De Soute Rivier*,<sup>83</sup> called so on account of its brakish water. The *Stink River* is mentioned in 1662 and was so named because in the summer time the water gave off an offensive smell. The *Mosselbank*, Dutch *Mossel* a mussel, mentioned in 1661, was so called because mussels were found on its bank.<sup>84</sup> The *Liesbeek* had two different names before it is found mentioned in 1657<sup>85</sup> as to-day, namely *Vers Rivier* and the *Amstel*.<sup>86</sup> *Lakeside* and *Muizenberg Vlei* were known two centuries ago as *De Groote Zeehoe Vlei* (found so in 1677), Dutch *Zeehoe*, hippopotamus, and *Zand Vlei* respectively,<sup>87</sup> and *Princess Vlei* was formerly *Diep Rivier Vlei*. The rivers *Kromboom*, Dutch *Krom*, crooked, and *Boom* a tree, and *Vygekraal*, Dutch *Vyge* a fig, are shown on a map before 1700.<sup>88</sup> *Elsies River* is marked on the same as *Elsjes Kraal River* which also appears on recent official maps. It probably owes its name to the cattle post of the Company *Elsjeskraal* sold in 1701.<sup>89</sup>

<sup>82</sup>Journal 19.7.1657.

<sup>83</sup>Journal 10.4, and 14.7.1652.

<sup>84</sup>Journal of van der Stel in 1685.

<sup>85</sup>Ibid 3.12.1657.

<sup>86</sup>Ibid 21.2.1657.

<sup>87</sup>Kolbe 1.89.

<sup>88</sup>Chart M. 42.

<sup>89</sup>Journal 15.6.1700.

Although the place name *Mowbray* was one given during the English period, yet it deserves a place here as its former name was held for more than a century and a quarter. The following information should clear up any doubt as to the meaning of the original name which commemorates a dastardly murder in 1724. In the Dutch days it was known as *De Drie Koppen*, 'The Three Heads. The Dutch word *Kop* means a head, especially applied to animals, or it may mean a cup. In 1723 a burgher, Johannes Zacharias Beck, lessee of the wine and spirit licence at Rondebosch, obtained a plot of ground adjoining the land of Cornelis Brits, known as Koornhoop,<sup>90</sup> for the purpose of setting up a tavern. The next year a terrible murder was perpetuated at the inn by three slaves. The Court of Justice sentenced the culprits to have their limbs broken without the *Coup de Grace* after which they were to be exposed on the wheel until death ensued, the one with an axe, the other with a knife, and the third with a bludgeon above their heads. These were the instruments used in carrying out their act. They were then to be decapitated and their heads placed upon stakes near the spot where the crime had been committed. Their trunks were to be left at the place of execution until devoured by the birds.<sup>91</sup> There were the three heads of the slaves at this place. In course of time it won itself the designation of *De Drie Koppen*. Now as explained the word *Kop* is used when referring to the head of animal and although a slave was a human being he was looked upon during the 18th century in the same light as goods and chattels. In the records of sales of slaves, horses, cattle, household furniture, all are classified together and in the returns of deaths of Company's slaves they are included in the same return as the Company's cattle, horses, oxen, that had died. After the English

---

<sup>90</sup>A name given to one of the redoubts built here in the days of van Riebeeck.

<sup>91</sup>Journal and Sententien 1724.

occupation in 1806 the name became anglicised but was wrongly translated as meaning three cups. Hence the village which grew up in course of time was known as *The Three Cups*. When a separate church district was formed in 1850 the inhabitants petitioned the Governor to have it changed to Mowbray. Their petition gives most illustrative facts when it states "That the name of *Three Cups*" is an erroneous translation of the Dutch words "Drie Koppen" which according to report was given to the place in commemoration of a most discreditable occurrence. That the name of Three Cups was originally given to an Inn built on the spot, but in the process of time it was applied to the village. That it is the opinion of your petitioners that the name of Three Cups is a very improper one for a village, and that it would naturally give rise to associations by no means agreeable."<sup>2</sup> The Governor was accordingly pleased in 1850 to accede to the request that it should be changed to Mowbray suggested by the petitioners who stated that "a great part of the village was built on an estate called Mowbray." In 1828 the name Mowbray appears when the house and grounds were put up for sale. This, I think, should dispel any doubt as to the original name and that it applied to three heads and not three cups.

*Woodstock* is still remembered by many people by its former name of *Papendorp* which has no reference to *papen* or *papists*, but refers to a burgher Pieter van Papendorp, a Hollander, who came out about the middle of the 18th century. The name applicable to the surroundings of what is now Woodstock, is mentioned in 1794. Major Michael Kenny, lately retired from the South African Police, tells us in an interesting article in the "Cape Argus"<sup>3</sup> that it was in the early eighties that this

---

<sup>2</sup>Memorials 1850. Colonial Office No. 1179. See also "Place Names in Cape District" by the writer.

<sup>3</sup>"Thirty Years a Policeman." *Cape Argus* 2.9.1922.

place received its present name, which was selected by the inhabitants of that locality. The greater number of these were fishermen who patronised the Woodstock Hotel and outvoted those who frequented the New Brighton Hotel then built, as a scheme was on foot to boom Papendorp as a watering place. Thus the name of the favourite village inn became the name of the new township.

*Wynberg* takes its name from the "vine-yard plot" which it means in Dutch and planted by van Riebeeck in 1658. This name was subsequently applied to the high grounds to the south and east. The farm of van Riebeeck was called *Boscheuvel*<sup>94</sup> afterwards known as *Protea*, a name found in 1795, and now Bishop's Court. The name of *Rondebosch*, near Cape Town, has an interesting origin. With it must be explained the name *Rustenburg*. The latter, once a large estate near by, is now only applied to the Girls' High School at *Rondebosch* which stands on portion of the original estate. In the years 1656 and 1657 the first named appears in the records in various forms, and it is interesting to note the changes. We find the name as *Ronde-doorbosjen*, the Little Round Thorn Grove, which is made up of the words *Rond*, round, *Doorn*, a thorn, *Bosjen* small grove. It was so named on account of a thorn grove which grew there. In 1657 van Riebeeck ordered that the "*Bosjen*" should be levelled inside and converted into a kraal or be used as a defence for a redoubt which he projected putting up. In the same entry in which it is called *Ronde Doornbosjen* it is also referred to as *Rondebosien*, bringing that name nearer to the present form. Other forms found are *Rondebossien*, *Rondebosjen*, *Rondebosschjen* and *Rondeboschje* and *Rondebosje*.<sup>95</sup> As early as 1671 the authorities laid out an estate and erected a pleasure house

---

<sup>94</sup>Mentioned in 1659. Journal 20.5.1659.

<sup>95</sup>Journal 17 and 19.5.1656; 15.10.1656; 7.2.1657; 22.8.1663.

at Rondebosch which they called *Rustenburg*.<sup>96</sup> In 1673 it was leased to two burghers. For some time the Cape Governors used it as a country seat until a place was built at Newlands when the Secunde or Vice-Governor occupied it. It has an historical connection because it was at the house of the Rustenburg estate that the Articles of Capitulation between the British and Dutch were signed on the 16th September, 1795. At this time it was in private hands, belonging to Mr. Gerhard Munnik. During the 19th century the house suffered from fire and how much of the original walls remain I cannot say. The interesting part about Rondebosch and Rustenburg is that in the 17th century the names seemed to be almost synonymous. In 1673 we read of Rondebosje or Rustenburg and in 1677 as "Rustenburgh alias Rondebosje."<sup>97</sup>

*Newlands* is the anglicised form of the estate *Nieuwland* laid out in 1700 by Governor W. A. van der Stel. It is situated a short distance beyond Rustenburg. Van der Stel had given much thought to the beautifying of this garden which covered more than fifty morgen of ground. A small lodge was erected here and during the eighteenth century became a favourite country seat of the Governors. In 1791 the Company sold this place to Mr. Hendrik Vos for £4,400.

The seaside place *Muizenberg* is still a matter of newspaper controversy as to its origin. Many aver that it has reference to the word *Muis*, a mouse, and that the form of this animal can be seen in the mountain. In 1657 the mountains round about here were known as *Steenberg*.<sup>98</sup> Dutch *Steen* a stone, where the Dutch Company established a post or station in 1673. As the road along the shore and over the mountain was the main line of

<sup>96</sup>Spelt *Rustenborgh* and *Rustenburgh*.

<sup>97</sup>Journal 1 and 5.5.1673. *Ibid* 26.1.1677.

<sup>98</sup>Journal 14.8.1657.

communication between Simons Town and the Castle a military outpost was established here and a sergeant and a few soldiers placed in charge. One of the sergeants was Wynand Willem Muys, who later became a Captain and Commandant of the garrison and died in 1754. In 1744<sup>99</sup> and eleven years later<sup>100</sup> we find this outpost referred to and spelt as *Muysenburg*. By the year 1788 this had assumed a spelling very near to the present one, namely, *Muizenburg*.<sup>101</sup> The word *Burg* means a fortified place.

*Simons Town* takes its name from the bay called in honour of Simon van der Stel. In 1743, the year after the bay was made a port of call, Governor-General van Imhoff gave instructions that a station was to be established there. A store and hospital with dwellings for the party sent in charge were put up. A sergeant, with the title of Postholder, and a few soldiers, were stationed there. In course of time a small village sprung up which became to be known as Simons Town. A quarter of a century later the place was enlarged by the erection of several dwellings and the officer in charge appointed in 1761 was given the title of Resident. The Resident appointed in 1774, Mr. Christoffel Brand, was a well known figure and entertained many celebrated travellers who touched at Simons Bay. In 1795 Simons Town was abandoned by the Dutch troops and inhabitants and occupied by the British soldiers under General Sir Auldred Clarke before they made their advance to *Muysenburg*. This advance culminated at Rustenburg, where the treaty was signed.

In 1683 the Company established four cattle posts, two of which were at *Rietvlei* and *Visser's Hoek* respectively. A few soldiers and slaves were stationed here. At the latter place the

<sup>99</sup>Resolutions Council of Policy 30.6.1744.

<sup>100</sup>Journal 30.6.1755.

<sup>101</sup>Memorien en Rapporten 1788.

Commonly grew wheat, grazed cattle and reared poultry for the Governor's table and household. During the war of 1781 several Englishmen on their way to Europe from India were taken from the ships they were in and interned as prisoners of war here. In 1685<sup>102</sup> it is called *Hendrik Visser's Hoeck* (*Hok*), no doubt being named after a Hendrik Visser. Rietvlei is mentioned in the Journal of 1670 as *Riet Valley*.

The names *De Oude Molen*, The Old Mill, and *De Nieuwe Molen*, situated near the present Alexandra Hospital, are reminders of the Dutch days. Here were the old corn mills built in those times and one of the mills still remains. *Witteboomen*, Dutch *Wit*, white, *Boomen* trees, (*Leucadendron Argenteum*), is the name of the well known silver trees found in the Cape Peninsula. This name was given to a place near Constantia as far back as 1672<sup>103</sup> and was so called on account of the great profusion of these silver trees which grew there. A grant of this farm was made in 1697. *Koeberg*, in the Cape District, is mentioned two centuries ago.

The area occupied by the present districts of Stellenbosch, Paarl, Malmesbury, Picquetberg and Clanwilliam had been inhabited by Europeans before the first quarter of the 18th century. It might be well, therefore, to take this area after that of the Cape. In the first named district there are several places which have an early origin. In the Journal of 1716 there is a place named *Jan De Jonkers Hoeck* (now *Jonkers Hoeck*). This was probably called after Jan Andrisse van Arensdorff alias Jan de Jonker who is mentioned in the records of 1691 as being a freeman at Stellenbosch.<sup>104</sup> In several of the older parts of the Colony is found some hill or eminence called *Canonberg* or *Kanonberg* and *Kanonkop*, Cannon Hill. This name is most

<sup>102</sup>Instructions July 1685 to Landdrost Mulder.

<sup>103</sup>Journal 23.11.1672.

<sup>104</sup>Crim: Proces Stukken. Declaratien 10.8.1691.

applicable as it is a reminder of the days when signal 'cannon' were placed on various high points throughout the country. They were fired off to warn the surrounding farmers that the alarm signal had been given at Cape Town. The burghers were required, upon hearing it, to arm themselves and assemble at such places previously notified. Immediately he heard the gun a farmer mounted his horse and rode to the meeting place, bringing with him his gun, some powder, rounds of ball, and a few days' rations. In connection with the training of the burgher militia there is a place commemorative of this — *Papegaaisberg*, — Dutch *Papegaai*, a parrot, near Stellenbosch. It owes its origin to the fact that the militia practised target shooting here during their annual training. The target took the form of a wooden parrot and points were awarded according to which part of the bird the marksman hit.

The earliest signal places were at *Tygerberg*, the *Schuur* (Rondebosch), on the Kloof towards Stellenbosch and at *Drakenstein*.<sup>105</sup> Signal stations were found in 1792 at the following places, viz.: Zout Rivier, Platteklcof, Hooberg or Hooggelegen, Granendorp *alias* Fisante Craal, Koeberg, Dassenberg, Kleine Paardeberg, Zwartland, Klipberg, de Kleine Swartberg, Riebeeck Kasteel, Baviaansberg, Honigberg, Rietfontein, Oude Roodesands' Kloof, Paardeberg, Paarberg, Joostenberg, Simonsberg, Duivenheuvel, Saxenberg, Hottentots Holland Berg, Kleine Houwhoek, Swartberg agter 't Warme Bad (now Caledon) Tigerhoek, Witzenberg, Bokke Kraal in de Goudini, Groeneberg, Klapmuts, Drakenstein.<sup>106</sup>

*Kuils River* was formerly known as *de Kuilen*, where the Company had established an outpost in 1683, but sold it in 1700 to Captain Olof Bergh, Commandant of the garrison. The present Agricultural College at *Elsenburg* was granted to and

<sup>105</sup>Journal 14.5.1690.

<sup>106</sup>Bylagen Feb. 1792.

commemorates Samuel Elsevier, Vice-Governor, at the beginning of the 18th century. *Mulders Vlei* owes its name to Jan Mulder, the first Landdrost of Stellenbosch, appointed in 1685. *Banghoek*, Dutch *Bang*, fearful, derives its name according to Kolbe from the fact that it was a dangerous place to pass, especially at night time. The road leading over the incline was narrow and dangerous, and infested with lions and tigers.<sup>107</sup> Crossing over here from Stellenbosch the traveller descends into *Drakenstein Valley* through which the Berg River runs. It was called so by Governor Simon van der Stel in 1687<sup>108</sup> after High Commissioner Hendrik Adriaan van Reede tot Drakenstein, who had visited the Cape two years before. It was first settled by Europeans in 1687 and the next year the French Refugees were located there. The *Drakenstein Mountains* derive their name from the valley. *Simonsberg*, which runs down one side of the valley, and *Simons Valley*, called after van der Stel, are mentioned in 1687.<sup>109</sup>

*Fransche Hoek* or French Hoek recalls the Refugees just mentioned. On a map of the Colony before 1700 it was designated as the *Fransche Quartier*, French Quarter. We find the present name of *Fransche Hoek* mentioned in 1730. *Zandvliet*, Dutch *Zand*, sand, *Vliet*, a brook or rivulet, was a large farm granted to the Reverend Petrus Kalden who was at the Cape Between the years 1695 and 1707. In the year 1699 there was buried on this farm a man of reputed sanctity and great influence, Sheik Joseph, who had arrived here in 1694 as a political prisoner. He had been concerned in a war at Bantam, in the island of Java, and was first sent to Ceylon. The Sheik, his family and a large number of followers were located near the place where he lies buried and is now known as the *Kramat*. This place has since been regarded by the Moslem community of the Cape

<sup>107</sup>Kolbe 1,117.

<sup>108</sup>Journal 16.10.1687.

<sup>109</sup>Journal 16.10.1687.

as a holy place and is visited by them in large numbers every year. The *Macassar Downs*, in the vicinity of this place, recalls the residence of this Macassar and his princely followers. *Helderberg*, Dutch *Helder*, clear, was known as such two centuries ago. In the Journal of Cruse's trip to the south-east in 1669 he records the name of the *Eerste* or First, *Tweede* or Second (*offte laeste*) Rivers. These names appear on a map of the Colony before the end of the 17th century.<sup>110</sup> Valentyn has the second river marked on his map as the *Laurens* River, which owed its name to the fact that a man Laurens had the misfortune to get drowned in it and was so called to distinguish it from the *Eerste* River. In 1714 it is still mentioned as the *Laurens*, but in time became spelt *Lourens*.

At the right entrance of the *Drakenstein Valley*, from *Paarl* to the right is a hillock called *Babylons Toren*, The Tower of Babel. It rises abruptly and stands isolated; the name, therefore, seems quite appropriate. The farm bearing this name was granted in 1690. *Wagenmaker's Vlei*, Wellington, Dutch for wagon-maker, is mentioned in the Journal of 1717.<sup>111</sup> *Koelenhof*, Dutch *Koelen*, to refresh, to cool, and *Hof* a garden, was known in Valentyn's time two centuries ago. The name *Groenekloof*, *Greenkloof*, Malmesbury, is mentioned as early as 1682,<sup>112</sup> where the Company had established a military post in 1701 but abandoned it about ninety years later.

The surroundings of *Saldanha Bay*, its inlets, capes and islands have quite an old history. In the early years after van Riebeeck came to the Cape it was frequently visited by Dutch and French ships. In 1653 a French ship stayed there for six months and collected 4,800 seal skins and several barrels of oil. The Dutch East India Company always kept a watchful eye

---

<sup>110</sup>M42.

<sup>111</sup>Journal 9.6.1717.

<sup>112</sup>Journal of O. Bergh, 1682.

that the French did not establish themselves here. In 1666 it established a military post which was shortly after taken by the French. In 1668 the beacons put up by the latter were removed and others of the Company erected. In 1669 the Dutch post was re-established but again taken by the French in the following year. In 1689 the Dutch establishment was reduced and only a few men left to keep watch. Surveys of the bay were made from time to time, particularly in 1729 and in 1738 a lengthy document was drawn up to show how it could be made a safe and useful harbour. The want of a sufficient quantity and good water appears to have retarded any scheme of improvement. In 1733 the Company became anxious about the designs of the French on Saldanha and St. Helena Bays and issued orders that a stone beacon was to be erected at the latter place. The Postholder at the former place then reported that beacons were erected on four of the islands, Hoetjes Bay and at the Company's Post.

Before 1656 no names appear to have been given to the islands. In that year we find mentioned *Jutten Island*,<sup>113</sup> Dutch Jut, a davit, *Madagascar Island*, which the following year is referred to as *Margasen Island*, and in 1667 as *Madagassen Island*.<sup>114</sup> This is now *Malagassen Island*, a name which is found in 1734. It refers to the *Malagas (sula capensis)* the common gannet of South Africa, found round the coast in countless thousands. In 1657 appear the names of *Marcus Island*<sup>115</sup> and *Schapen Island*. The former was called after Corporal Marcus Robbejaert, at one time in charge of Robben Island.<sup>116</sup> On a chart of Saldanha Bay executed in 1660 a number of other names appear as, *Riet Bay*, *Vondeling Island (Foundling Is.)*, *Salamander Bay*,<sup>117</sup> *Potters Bay*,<sup>117</sup> *Lacus Bay*,<sup>117</sup> and *Meeuwen*

<sup>113</sup>Journal 9.3.1656.

<sup>114</sup>*Ibid* 29.9.1667.

<sup>115</sup>*Ibid* 24.1.1657; 27.10.1657.

<sup>116</sup>Letters Despatched Lr 3.4.1654.

<sup>117</sup>Chart No. 9. Mentioned in Journal 9.12.1660.

*Island*.<sup>117</sup> The first three and the last one still remain. It is probable that *Salamander Bay* derived its origin from the Dutch East Indiaman *Salamander*, which had called there in 1655 on her way from Holland to the Indies. The Journal in referring to her arrival in Table Bay says "Long becalmed off the Cape, and been provided with birds, eggs and greens at Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island, which restored the crew to health."<sup>118</sup> *Potters Bay*, afterwards *Hoetjes Bay*, called after Pieter Potter of Amsterdam, Surveyor of the Company, and a member of several expeditions inland. *Lacus Bay*<sup>119</sup> commemorates Hendrik Lacus of Wesel, also a Surveyor who became Fiscal or Public Prosecutor in 1663. This name did not survive as in 1729 it is marked on a chart as part of *Baviaans Bay*<sup>120</sup> and now marked *Baviaans Bay* or *North Bay*.

The name *Potters Bay* did not survive either, for in 1669 reference is made to *Hoeties Bay*,<sup>121</sup> and in the following year to *Hoedjes Bay*.<sup>122</sup> The Journals of these two years are wanting in the Cape Archives and it is therefore impossible to compare them with the verbatim copies made more than forty years ago in Holland. There is no doubt that the first is meant for *Hoetje's* and that the interchange<sup>123</sup> of the letters d and t was owing to the spoken and written language. In 1660 van Riebeeck made an inspection of Saldanha Bay and reported thereon.<sup>124</sup> Saldanha Bay, he wrote, was an excellent harbour, rich in fish, but there was no good, fresh water or any suitable

<sup>117</sup>Journal 4.11.1655.

<sup>118</sup>Shown in 1738 as Lucas Bay, indicating how names are misspelt by the interchange of letters.

<sup>119</sup>Mentioned in Journal 27.4.1702, no doubt so called on account of the number of baboons on the land near by.

<sup>120</sup>Journal 8.7.1669.

<sup>121</sup>*ibid* 9.7.1670.

<sup>122</sup>On a chart (No. 11) of 1738 the Bay is marked as Oedekens Bay.

<sup>124</sup>Journal 9.12.1660.

ground on which to sow or plant anything. In *Lacus Bay* there was not always water in summer time, *Potters Bay*, also without water, but full of fish, could harbour two to four ships. The best, however, was Salamander Bay, as assisted with the ebb tide, which was very strong, ships might, with one or two tacks, get easily outside.

On the chart of 1738 is marked a *Bruydegoms Hoek* (south of Riet Bay), which has not survived, but evidently referred to the *Bruydegom*, one of the ships in van Riebeeck's time.

*Stomp Point* was charted in 1729 as *Stompe Hoek*, and at this time there was a battery situated to the north of Salamander Bay. *Signal Hill* was marked in 1738 as *Uithyſ* and *Oostenwal* was the *Vis Post* of Hendrik Oostwald Eksteen in 1729. No doubt the present name has reference to the second name of Eksteen. On the opposite side of this place, across the bay, is *De Oude Post* which recalls the site of the old station of the Dutch East India Company. This place gives rise to the *Postberg*, the mountain which runs along the Peninsula. The hill to the south, *Constable Hill*, is noted in 1738 as *Den Constabel*. Whether *Schryvers Hoek* on the south of the lagoon has reference to that intrepid 17th century explorer Isaac Schryver, I am not certain. But it is quite probable. Between *Jut* and *Salamander Bays* is an opening which is not named on the present maps, but this was formerly *Teelings Bay*, which name is still recorded on Colonel Gordon's Map of 1782. This is mentioned in 1660<sup>125</sup> and was called after Eeuwout Teelings, a Book-keeper in the Company's service.

Near St. Helena Bay is *St. Martins Point*, and to the southwest *Paternoster Bay*. On the early maps and in the records, these two places seem to have had a connecting link at one time. Dapper's map marks a *St. Martins Bay* and a *St. Martins Paternoster*, the first name is also given in Blaauw's Atlas. A

---

<sup>125</sup>Journal 9.12.1660.

map of Pierre Mortier shows a *St. Martins Bay* which is about the situation of the present *Paternoster Bay*. In the official Journal of 1693<sup>126</sup> reference is made to *St. Martin Paternoster*<sup>127</sup> which is referred to as to the south-west of *St. Helena Bay*. The name seems to have been split up and *St. Martins* refers to the Point — so found on Barrow's map — and *Paternoster* to the Bay.

In the Swellendam district is a *Sergeants River*, called *Geska* by the Hottentots and is mentioned by Jan Hartogh in 1707. We are told in a report of 1725 that it received its name owing to the fact that a Sergeant in the Company's service was torn to pieces by a lion there.<sup>128</sup> At *Grootvaders Bosch*, Dutch, *Grootvader*, grandfather, the Government opened in 1744 a school, and placed a sick comforter in charge to conduct religious services for the inhabitants living beyond the Breede River. In 1734 a military post was established at *Rietylei* on the Buffeljagts River and along the coast line of the present Bredasdorp district is a place *Zoetendals Vlei* which owes its name to the ship *Zoetendal*, wrecked along the coast in 1673. A farm on this river was given on "loan" in 1724 to Claas Janz van Rensburgh. *Klaas Voogds Rivier*, in the Robertson district, is probably called after Claas Voogt, who, in 1717, went with another to overtake some marauding natives.<sup>129</sup> The *Poesenjals (Poesenels) River*, which, like the previous river runs into the Breede, had already been named in 1729. There is also a *Sarah's River* and a farm given on "loan" in 1723 is referred to as the *Saras Rivier*. It would be interesting to arrive at the derivation of *Cogmans Kloof*. In 1701 the

<sup>126</sup>11.2.1693.

<sup>127</sup>In a map by R. and I. Ottens is shown a *St. Martens Paternosters*.

<sup>128</sup>Attestatien, 1724.1725.

<sup>129</sup>Journal 9.6.1717. Previous to 1729 it was given "on loan" to Claas Janse van Rensburg.

Sergeant in charge of the military outpost in 't land van Waveren (Tulbagh) reported an attack by Hottentots of the "Koekeman tribe."<sup>130</sup> In 1725 a farm was "loaned" between the *Saras Rivier* and the "Cochemans Kloof." In 1750 the name "Kochemans Kloof" appears, and in 1766 it is found as "Cogmans Kloof." In Barrow's map of his travels in 1797-8, it is "Koekmans Kloof," while on Lichtenstein's map it is marked as "Kochman's Kloof." It is interesting to note that in 1728 a Loan Farm was given out at *Cogmanse Valley* "over de Berg." *Chavonnesberg*, in the Worcester district, commemorates the name of Maurits Pasques de Chavonnes, Governor from 1714 to 1724. The hot spring, *Brand Vlei*, Dutch, *Brand*, fire, in the same district is well named, and was occupied as a "Loan Farm" as far back as 1727. *De Doorns*, thorns, takes its name from a farm occupied in 1725 which is described as "*De Doorens boven aan de Hexe Rivier*." In the district of Bredasdorp along the coast is a *Schoonberg Bay* which commemorates the Dutch East Indiaman *Schoonenberg* that went ashore there in 1722.

---

<sup>130</sup>Journal 26.11.1701.

## III.

## FARM NAMES.

The study of place names in the Cape Province gives us a fair insight into the distribution of wild animals and game, which, at one time, inhabited certain areas. The constant hunting by Europeans and Natives has driven many of these far from their usual abode. In some cases they have become almost exterminated. Animals, such as the elephant, the eland, the hippopotamus and the rhinoceros, were found in several parts of the Western Province in the early days of the settlement. This is illustrated in many of the farm names. In the Cape District there is still an *Oliphants Kop*, *Elephants Head*, *Zee-koe Vlei*, *Hippopotamus Vlei*. In the Paarl district we still find an *Elands-kloof* and an *Elandsjagt*. In the district of Picquetberg, Bredasdorp and Swellendam there are farms *Rhenosterug* and *Rhenosterfontein*.

In Barrow's "Travels" is a map of the Colony as it appeared during his journey in 1797 and 1798. He records on it the names of certain animals found at that time. I have tried to group these and place them according to the present districts of the province. Lions and kodoos were found in Aberdeen and Jansenville and also between Schuilhoek Berg in the Steynsburg district to near the present town of Colesberg. Tigers or leopards were found about the same places. The buffalo roamed in Knysna, Humansdorp, Willowmore, Aberdeen and Jansenville, while the elephant was to be found from the Sundays to the Kowie Rivers. Strange that the hippopotamus and rhinoceros are only said to be in Bathurst, but there is

evidence that they were still much in evidence in the north-east of the country. The eland, at one time found in many parts, was seen in Prince Albert, Beaufort West, Willowmore, and in great numbers between Schuilhoek Berg and Colesberg; the wolf and the hyena in Aberdeen and Jansenville and the gnu or wildebeest in Somerset East and Graaff-Reinet. The zebra was in Prince Albert, Beaufort West and Willowmore and, in addition to these three areas, the quagga existed in Somerset East, Graaff-Reinet and in great numbers between Schuilhoek Berg and Colesberg. The hartebeest appears to have roamed along with the zebra and quagga, but was also to be found in Knysna and Humansdorp. The wild ostrich lived in the same districts as these last three animals as well as in Jansenville and Aberdeen. The antelope and gazelle family of animals as the rietbok, Dutch *riet*, a reed, and *boh*, a buck, was only found along the Winterhoeksbergen where was also found the grysbok which lived in Bredasdorp and Caledon as well. The springbok was found almost everywhere and the bontebok in Swellendam and between the Schuilhoek Berg and Colesberg. In Swellendam, Knysna, Humansdorp, Uitenhage, Winterhoekbergen and between the Schuilhoek Berg and Colesberg was the rhebok; the duiker in many districts. The gemsbok was in several Karoo districts, in Colesberg, the Bokkeveld and Roggeveld, while the steenbok was in Bredasdorp, Caledon, Swellendam, Winterhoekbergen. Beyond the Fish River, writes Barrow, there was game of all kinds, but almost exterminated by hunters and ravenous animals. If we look through the present farm names we will find a great number relating to these animals. This is another aid to trace their abode.

The following farm names which refer to various kinds of animals and game have been drawn from a number of districts throughout the Province. They give us some idea as to the universal use of many animal names when giving a place a name. In some cases the same name is found in several

districts. They also show the various words with which they are compounded. The bontebok does not seem to be so universal, there is a *Bontebokkuil* in Caledon. The *baviaan* or baboon is found compounded with *krans*, *berg*, *rivier*, *klouf* and *drift* in many places. The *buffel* appears to have roamed over the length and breadth of the old Cape Colony and is found in various forms as *Buffels Vlei Rivier*, *Buffels Valleij* in Caledon, *Buffelsjagt* and *Buffelsfontein* in Bredasdorp. *Buffelsfontein*, *Buffelshoek*, *Buffelsklouf* and *Kraal* are general. Of all the larger animals that existed in the 18th century the name of the eland seems to have been more frequently used than any of the others. It would become tedious to mention the various districts in which these place names appear and to repeat the same names which are found in different districts. It might be more instructive to show the variety of forms in which the names are found. There is *Elandsklouf* which occurs frequently, *Elands-pad*, *Elandsjagt*, *Elandschoek*, *Elands Valleij*, *Elandsdrift*, *Elandsrug*, *Elandsfontein*, *Elandsberg*, *Elands Hoorn* (in Uitenhage) *Elands Dans*, *Elands Rivier*, *Elands Vlakte*. The name of the gemsbok is not so frequent, it is found as *Gemsbok-Kuil*, *Gemsbokfontein*, whilst the hartebeest is compounded with *rivier*, *kraal*, *fontein*, *kuil*, and *poort*. *Kodoeskop* in Swellendam and *Koedoeshloof* in Graaff-Reinet show that the koodoo was not a favourite name. The *Olifant* or elephant begins not far from the mother city, as *Olifants Kop* and *Fransche Hoek* was formerly known as *Oliphants Hoek*; *kop*, *berg*, *bosch*, *rivier*, *klouf*, *fontein* and *kuil* are as a rule compounded with this animal's name.

It might be said, with safety, that with almost all animal names the compound *fontein* is found. This would, no doubt, refer to the fountain or spring where the animal came to drink. The *leeuw* or lion is found throughout the country, while the quagga, or quacha, is found as a place name in the districts of Sutherland, Fraserburg, Graaff Reinet and Cradock. The

thebok and the rhenoster seem to be mostly associated with the *fontein*. In Aberdeen, Uitenhage and Cradock, *Steenbokvlakte* is a common name. The *wildebeest* does not appear so very common as a place name. *Wilde Paarde* is compounded with *kraal*, *berg*, *kloof*, and frequently with *fontein*. *Wolven* is found in *Wolvenkloof*, *Wolvenberg*, *Wolvenbosch*, *Wolvendans*, and with *rivier* and *kraal*. The *Zeehoë*, hippopotamus, is mostly found with *gat*, but also with *vallei* and *rivier*. This animal was found in a number of places.

The extermination of many of the carnivorous animals, as the lion, leopard and tiger, from certain areas can easily be understood. The advance of civilization made them disappear. The disappearance of the larger animals as the elephant and the hippopotamus and the small game was occasioned through the constant hunting by the Europeans, either for sport or food. Not only is the fauna represented in our place names, but also the flora. The following few names are given as an illustration of this; *Blaauwbloemetjes Kloof* in the Cape district, and in Calvinia *Blomfontein*, in Picquetberg there is a *Blaauwbloemetjes Vlei*. Indigenous trees and shrubs are all represented, as the *Karee*<sup>1</sup> *Melkbosch*, *Melkhout Boom*. The *Ganna*, a species of *Mesembryanthemum* and the *Gannabosch* species of *Salsola*, is frequently found in place names as *Ganna kraal*, *Ganna Kloof*, *Ganna Hoek* and *Ganna Vlakte*. Burchell, in his *Travels* (1: 127) says the *Kanna Bosch* (written *Ganna* by the Dutch) may probably have been considered as the favourite food of the *kanna*<sup>2</sup> (eland) and the *rhenoster bosch*, which also has given several place names, a pale bushy shrub of

<sup>1</sup>Van Plattenberg's Journal says the "Care Boom" maakt een narden, buigzaam hout welk door de Hottentoten veel tot hunne Hasegaeijen Schiet bogen gebezigt worden."

<sup>2</sup>In G. F. Wreede's "Hottentotse Woorde-lijst" (17th century) tkanna is given as meaning an eland. In Molsbergen's "Reizen in Zuid Afrika," 1.216, on page 221, he has also K'chamma for an eland.

about three or four feet, is said to have formerly been the food of the large rhinoceros (p. 101). From the *kalabas*, Dutch for a gourd, the fruit of a cucurbitaceous plant, the shell of which, when dried, is used for holding liquids, we get the general name *Kalabas Kraal*. From *pampoen* (Dutch pumpkin) and *vyg*, (Dutch for fig) and *boontje* (Dutch *boon*, a bean) we get *Pampoenkraal*, *Vygekraal* and *Boontjeskraal*. The *els* (Dutch for alder tree) elder tree is frequently found as *Witte Els* and *Roode Els*. The *slang*, Dutch for snake, is illustrated by *Slang Kop*, *Slang Fontein*, *Slang River*, *Geelslang* and *Adderfontein*. Of birds, land and sea, there are a variety, as *Uilberg* (Dutch *Uil* an Owl) *Phesante Kraal* (Pheasant), *Spreeuwfontein*, *Korhaans Drift*, *Kraankuil*, *Kraanvogel Kuil*, *Agsvogel Kuil*, *Vogelfontein*, *Vogelvallei*, (Dutch *Vogel*, a bird), *Vogel Rivier* and *Canariesfontein*. *Penquin Rock* and *Meeuw Rock*, (Dutch *Meeuw*, a gull) are examples of places referring to sea-birds. The Dutch *haas*, a hare, *dassie*, rock rabbit and *baviaan*, a baboon, names compounded with another word, are numerous as place names. The amphibious animal the frog is found in *Kiſvorschberg* (Colesberg) and the toad, in *Paddafontein*. Fishes and sea animals are represented in names as *Kreefte Bay*, (lobster or crayfish) (there are no less than three such names on the western coast between latitudes 30° and 34°), *Geelbekfontein* and *Kabeljauws River*, (Dutch *Kabeljauw*, a Cod). The latter derives its name from the fish found near its mouth.<sup>3</sup> There is *Vis River*, *Great Fish River* and *Kiswater*. On the south coast are *Noordkapper Point* and *Noordkapper Bay* (Dutch *Noordkaper*, an ore, a kind of whale). The *Steenbrasem River* is a Dutch word meaning rock whiting. The bivalve mollusc the mussel was given to *Mossel Bay* (Dutch) *mossel*, a mussel, by an early Dutch navigator because he could obtain no other food from the natives. The name of the carnivorous amphibious

---

<sup>3</sup>Paterson's Travels.

marine mammal the seal has been given to *Seal Island* and *Robben Island*<sup>3</sup> (Dutch *rob*, plural *robben*, a seal). From the genus of rodents we have *Muis Kraal* (Dutch *muis*, a mouse), and from the nocturnal mouse-like quadruped, the bat, we also have the Dutch form of *Vledermuis Poort*.

In compiling a rough list of the farm names throughout the Province we are forcibly struck with the constant use of the same name or a slight variation thereof, although the farms are situated in widely separated districts. This applies also to the naming of rivers and mountains. At times it becomes very confusing, particularly if the exact situation is not closely described. Evidently in some cases there was no difficulty in naming a place and the appropriateness of that given was very applicable to each locality. Take the following example. In the days of the pioneer as he pushed his way towards the mountain barrier he found himself in some spot at the foot of the mountain from which he could make no further advance. Therefore he was obliged to turn back or settle where he was. He had come to a secluded mountain valley with a narrow entrance which was easily reached but where, unless he travelled the same route, egress was difficult. In such a case the name applied was *Keerweder*, Dutch *keeren* to turn, *weder* again. Sometimes the compound *hoek* was applied as *Fransche Hoek* and *Bang Hoek*, *Winter Hoek*. Such a place name is invariably found situated at the foot of a mountain range where the traveller comes to a *cul-de-sac*. Near Helderberg, in the Stellenbosch district, at the foot of the Klein Drakenstein and at Fransche Hoek will be found a *Keerweder*. The latter is also found in the form of *Keerom*,<sup>4</sup> turn back, as in the Clanwilliam, Colesberg and Somerset East districts and found as well as in the form *Omdraai*.

---

<sup>4</sup>Beutler records in 1752 that his party came to a certain farm called by the farmers Keerom, as it was impossible to come through there with wagons.

The name *Houd Den Bek*, literally be quiet, is found at the foot of the Sneeuwberg in Graaff-Reinet, in the Cold Bokkeveld, Ceres, in the Field Cornetcy of Bottelary, Stellenbosch and in Sutherland. Places relating to a *moordenaar*, murderer, are found in various forms. In the Hantam is a narrow defile called *Moordenaarspoort*, on account of several colonists having been killed there by Bushmen. There is a *Moordenaars Kloof* in Tulbagh and in Caledon; *Moordenaars Hoek* near Touws River in Worcester; a *Moordenaars Hoogte* in Robertson. On the Matjes River, Clanwilliam is *Moord Hoek*, from the Dutch *moord*, a murder, a *Moordenaars Berg*, in Uniondale, a *Moordenaars Kraal*, in Uitenhage and in Bedford there is a *Moordenaars Drift*. These places evidently have reference to some atrocious murders which took place there or because the nature of the surroundings were such where a murderer would commit his deed. In many cases probably the murders were committed by the roving Bushmen. *Zoo Voorby* is evidently an indication to the traveller that he must pass this place if he wishes to go on the right road. This name is found in the districts of Swellendam and Picquetberg. The farm in the latter district was given on "loan" in 1738.

Names that suggest the rule of the Dutch East India Company are often met with as *Compagnies Drift*, in Caledon, Clanwilliam<sup>s</sup> and Van Rhynsdorp; *Compagnies Rivier* in Paarl, mentioned in 1709; *Sleutel van Compagnies Dam*, Cape; *Groote Post*, *Oude Post* in Malmesbury. *Commandants Drift*, which is found in several districts, refers to the days when every male between sixteen and sixty years of age had to do military duty. When the alarm was sounded they had to assemble under their respective commandants. Names connected with runaway slaves appear in various districts. Often slaves deserted their masters and found some safe place to congregate. Here they lived for days at

---

<sup>2177</sup> name is mentioned in Rhenius' Journal, 1724 Molsbergen, 2.15.

liberty, until captured by a band of mounted burghers sent out to hunt them. For example, there is *Drosders Nek* in Caledon, *Wegloopers Heuvel* in Picquetberg and *Drosters Kloof* in Worcester.

*Alleman* compounded with another word is a name found in many districts. Whether its origin refers to its general meaning — everyone, every body — or to the family of that name, of which Captain Rudolph Siegfried Alleman was the ancestor, I cannot say. In the district of Aberdeen there are two places both called *Alleman's Kraal* and one in Uitenhage; in Jansenville there is an *Alleman's Gat*; in Cradock an *Alleman's Hoek*, now *Petrusdal*; an *Alleman's Poort* in Albert; an *Alleman's Fontein* in Somerset East, and an *Alleman's Drift* in Colesberg. The latter place was brought into prominence in 1842 on account of an event which occurred there between the representatives of the Colonial Government and the Emigrant Boers. In that year Natal had been taken by the British and a number of emigrant farmers had moved over the Vaal, and others joined their friends along the Riet, Modder and Caledon Rivers. Near Philippolis were two parties, one friendly disposed and the other bitterly opposed to the British. The Civil Commissioner of Colesberg received a letter from the leader of the first party that the other section intended to hold a meeting at *Alleman's Drift*, the ford of the Orange River nearest Colesberg, erect a beacon and proclaim the whole country north of the river a republic. A few days after Mr. Justice Wm. Menzies arrived on Circuit at Colesberg. He was convinced that there were many of the Boers willing to come under the British rule and that the meditated action of the opposing factor should be frustrated. Two days before the intended meeting Menzies crossed the river at *Alleman's Drift* and on its northern bank caused to be read in Dutch the proclamations of the Cape Governor of the 2nd December, 1841, and 7th September, 1842, regarding the Emigrant Farmers. He explained to the concourse gathered there that in order to carry

into effect the objects in view in issuing these acts he was going to take possession, in the name of the Queen, of all the territory to the Eastward of  $22^{\circ}$  of East Longitude and to the Southward of  $25^{\circ}$  of South Longitude, not being in the lawful possession of the Portuguese Crown or any native tribe or chief. A declaration by him setting forth the above facts was read in English and Dutch, the Judge reading it in English. It began: "I, William Menzies, Esq., First Puisne Judge of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, do hereby declare, that in the name of and on behalf of Her Majesty Victoria, etc. . . I have on this day taken possession . . . ." He then planted a British ensign. A young willow tree trunk, supported by stones, was planted on a hillock, and to it was nailed a plank with the inscription: "Baaken van Koningin van England." (Beacon of the Queen of England.)

The morning of the 24th October, 1842, the day on which the farmers were to proclaim the republic, saw the Queen's Beacon undisturbed and Menzies and his party meeting the leader and some three hundred burghers of the opposing side. The Judge addressed them through one of his followers and said he had come to prevent crime, strife and bloodshed and considered that they should commence their interview by prayer to God so as to incline their hearts to enable them to prevent strife and bloodshed. Everyone uncovered his head while the Revd. Mr. Read, whom the Judge had brought with him, prayed in Dutch. Mr. Menzies spoke for more than an hour and often the address assumed the nature of a conversational debate or discussion between him and his interpreter. He explained to the other party the law of High Treason by levying war against the Queen and made clear the first two clauses of 6 and 7 William 4th Cap. 57, and the jurisdiction given by it to the Supreme Court and the Judges. He advised them in the Queen's name to disperse. A few days later in writing in justification of his act to the Governor, Sir George Napier, he said that he

was not actuated by political views, but solely by the consideration whether any means, which it was in his power to adopt, could be any efficacy in attaining his object — the prevention of crime and the arrest of the offenders. He remarked that he knew as an individual or Judge he had no right to issue the proclamation in his name, but did not wish to implicate the Governor by issuing it in his name. Besides the office of Governor and perhaps Lieutenant-Governor, he said, there was no office in the Colony with which the Boers commanded for its holder such respect as that of a Judge of the Supreme Court. Sir George Napier did not approve of Judge Menzie's proclamation and by a proclamation of the 3rd November 1842, repudiated the whole proceeding as being unauthorised.

In Section II, Part II, reference was made to the form of land tenure in vogue up to 1813. From the names of the farms "loaned" I have endeavoured to give some idea of the direction in which the farmers moved. In glancing through the farm names which appear in the Wildschut Boek, sometimes referred to as the Ordonnantie Boek, we find many names which exist to-day. Some have been retained for more than two centuries. It is in cases such as these that we would like to see the names remain unchanged. In many instances, owing to the vague description in the registers, it is very difficult to identify the places mentioned. What adds to this difficulty is that many farms, rivers, mountains and other physical features were given the same name. It would be almost impossible to-day to give the reasons why some of these places were named, but in many instances their meaning explains this and this is especially obvious to those who know the locality well. As I have tried to show in Section, I, Part II, when giving an explanation of general terms used in South African nomenclature, a number of places received their names from the physical features of the country or from the fact that the locality abounded in various kinds of fauna and flora. It is interesting to note that few indeed, except in

farms granted to the French Refugees, received the names of places in Europe from which the first occupiers came. In locating the farms and the year in which they are mentioned we can trace the movements of the farmer through the Colony. I give below a few of the places which are recorded in the Wildschut Boek. This will show the reader the length of time these places have retained their names and the period at which some are first mentioned. To compile a list of all the farms given out on loan in the 18th century which could be identified to-day, would necessitate a separate publication.

NAME OF FARM PHYSICAL FEAT- TURE OR LOCALITY.	YEAR OF PERMIT.	PRESENT DISTRICT IN WHICH SITU- ATED.	REMARKS.
<i>Laurens River</i>	1714	Stellenbosch	Near Sir Lowry's Pass. It is interesting to note an advertisement in 1855 in the Cape Town papers <sup>a</sup> refer- ring to the proposed new village Ballana Stanford, better known as <i>Gustrouw</i> . Sir Robert Stanford intended to establish a village here. See page 162.
<i>Gustrouw</i>	1723	do.	
<i>Voorburg</i>	1716	do.	Hottentots Holland. Permit to Philip Morkel.
<i>Lange Vallei</i>	1709	Paarl	Marked as Wemmers Hoek on map of Cape Colony, 1895.
<i>Goede Hoop</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Wimmers or Wemmers Hoek</i>	1729	do.	
<i>Bartholomeus Klip</i>	1729	do.	
<i>du Toits Kloof</i>	1734	do.	
<i>Zout River</i>	—	Malmesbury	Mentioned in Journal of O. Bergh. 1682.

<sup>a</sup>e.g., Commercial Advr. 6.1.1855, Cape Monitor 10.1.1855.

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Year of Permit.	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>De Vogelsang</i>	—	Malmesbury	Mentioned in Journal of April, 1676.
<i>Ganze Kraal</i>	1709	do.	Mentioned in 1673 in instructions to Ser- geant Cruse.
<i>Burgers' Drift</i>	1709	do.	Across the Berg River.
<i>Karnmelks Fontein</i> before	1719	do.	
<i>Twee Kuilen</i>	1720	do.	
<i>Bakoven</i>	1714	do.	
<i>Vogelstruis- fontein</i>	1723	do.	
<i>Leeuwen Vallei</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Geelbekfontein</i>	1729	do.	At Saldanha Bay.
<i>Kraane Vallei</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Theefontein</i>	1716	do.	To Jasper Slabbert.
<i>Portuguese Fontein</i>	1721	do.	Marked on map of Cape Colony, 1895 as Por- tuguese Font.
			It is probably called after the Hottentot Captain, "Portugies" mentioned in the Journal of the 13th March, 1701.
<i>Groot Fontein</i>	1729	do.	
<i>Brood Kraal</i>	1725	do.	
<i>Maarsberg</i>	1724	do.	
<i>Massenberg</i>	1731	do.	Marked on 1895 map as <i>Massenberg</i> .
<i>Thekocsklip</i>	1751	do.	"Aan de Hoetjes Baay" marked on 1895 map as <i>Teekoes</i> .
<i>Vondelling</i>	1723	Picquetberg	
<i>Honigberg</i>	1709	do.	Referred to in 1676 as <i>Honingbergen</i> .
<i>Pampoene Kraal</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Elsensbosch</i>	1727	do.	Marked on 1895 as <i>Essensbosch</i> .
<i>Doorn Fontein</i>	1728	do.	
<i>Klein Vogel Vallei</i>	1715	do.	
<i>Deeze Hoek</i>	1729	do.	
<i>Groene Vallei</i>	1715	do.	
<i>Hercules Fontein</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Pieters Klip</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Gonjemans Kraal</i>	1726	do.	Described as "Aan de <i>Piekeniers Cloof</i> ."

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Permit. of Year	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>Goedemans Kraal</i>	1723	Picquetberg	<i>Described as "-By de Baviaansberg." This place is marked on the 1895 map as below Baviaans Kloof. Gonjemans Kraal would owe its name to the Hottentot Chief Gonnema, or as mentioned in van der Stel's Journal of 1685 as Goenjeman.</i>
<i>Kruls River</i>	1725	do.	
<i>De Ryskloof</i>	1716	do.	
<i>De Drooge Ryskloof</i>	1716	do.	Marked on 1895 map as <i>Drooge Rust Kloof.</i>
<i>Namaquasfontein</i>	1720	do.	
<i>Goerap</i>	1728	do.	Described as "boven de <i>Picquetbergen</i> " marked on 1895 map as <i>Geergap</i>
<i>Oud Constant</i>	1730	do.	Marked on 1895 map <i>Noud Constant</i> , appears always to have been spelt as in first column.
	before		
<i>Romans River</i>	1734	do.	
<i>Kromme Riviers Vallei</i>	1724	do.	
<i>Verloren Vallei</i>	1723	do.	
<i>Klaare Fontein</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Bosjesmans Kloof</i>	1731	do.	
<i>Theunis Kuyl</i>	1725	Tulbagh	On loan to Theunis Bevernage — marked on divisional map as <i>Theunis-Kraal.</i>
<i>Cruys Valley, now</i>			
<i>Kruis Vallei</i>	1725	do.	
<i>Winterhoek</i>	1725	do.	
<i>De Twee Jonge Gezellen</i>	1725	do.	
<i>Verrekyker</i>	—	do.	This name appears frequently.

Name of Farm (Physical Feature or Locality.	Year of Permit.	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>Straatskerke</i>	1725	Tulbagh	On loan to Johannes de Clerq, a French Refugee, who came from Straaskerke, in Walcheren Is.
<i>Vogel Vallet</i>	—		Mentioned in Journal 3rd Feb., 1702. At one time a military post of the Dutch East India Company.
<i>Modder Fontein Aan de Rhenoster Hoek</i>	1725	Clanwilliam	
	1726	do.	On loan to Jan Dissel after whom Jan Dissel's Vlei was named.
<i>Hendrik van de Wats Gat</i>	1727	do.	
<i>De Hoek</i>	1731	do.	Now <i>The Hoek</i> .
<i>Klein Vallet</i>	1728	do.	Near <i>Augsburg</i> . Probably the Kleyn Valey mentioned in van der Stel's Journal of 1685.
<i>Brakkefontein</i>	1727	do.	(Near <i>Doorn River</i> .)
<i>Cartouw</i>	1731	do.	
<i>Mitsgund</i>	1726	do.	Now also known as <i>Halve Dorsvloer</i> .
	before		
<i>Halve Dorsvloer</i>	1744	do.	
<i>'t Pakhuys</i>	1744	do.	Now <i>Pakhuis</i> .
<i>Mietjesfontein</i>	1752	do.	
<i>Diepe Kloof</i>	1733		
		Van Rhynsdorp.	
<i>Groote Khobe</i>	1744	do.	Kobe on 1895 map.
<i>Matskamma</i>	1745	do.	Marked Matzlekamma on 1895 map.
<i>Mascammas Berg</i>	1753	do.	
<i>Vondeling</i>	1749	do.	
<i>Vaderlandsche Rietkuyl</i>	1750	do.	

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Year of Permit.	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>Trutro</i>	1751	Van Rhynsdorp.	Now marked <i>Troe-Troe</i> . Marked as <i>Trutru</i> on map in "A visit to The Mauritius and South Africa" by James Backhouse. Published 1844. This has probably the same meaning as the Afrikaans word <i>tru!</i> <i>back!</i> (used to cows and oxen.)
<i>Oorlogfontein</i>	1751	do.	
<i>Kleine Chobe</i>	1751	do.	Kobe on 1895 map.
<i>Wagenbooms Rivier</i>	1728	Ceres	
<i>Bokfontein</i>	1728	do.	
<i>Winterhoek</i>	1731	do.	
<i>Rietvallei</i>	1729	do.	
<i>Leeuwen Fontein</i>	1733	do.	
<i>Tweefonteinen</i>	1746	do.	Described as "in 't Kouwe Bokkeveld."
<i>De Winkelhaak</i>	1746	do.	Described as "Aan de Groote Bockeveld."
<i>Molen Rivier</i>	1750	do.	
<i>Driefontein</i>	1750	do.	
<i>De Nauga</i>	1754	do.	Marked Nougā on map 1895.
<i>Lookeburg</i>	1744	Calvinia	Described as "in de ooge van het Bokke- veld." Marked on 1895 map <i>Lokenburg</i> , which was the way it is spelt in the Journal of de Mist's trip to the north-west in 1803.
<i>Avontuur</i>	1742	do.	
<i>Vogelfontein</i>	1746	do.	
<i>Swellingrebel</i>	1745	do.	Marked as <i>Zwellen- grebal</i> on 1895 map.

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Permit of Year	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>Driefonteinen</i>	1749	Calvinia	Described as "in de Roggeveld."
<i>Akerendam</i>	1750	do.	
<i>Hantams Berg</i>	1755	do.	
<i>Soektop</i>	1750	do.	It is so written in permit but no doubt the <i>Soekop</i> on the 1895 map refers to it.
	before	do.	
<i>Brandwagt</i>	1756		
<i>Onwetende</i>	1756		
<i>Fontein</i>		do.	
<i>Groen River</i>	1750	do.	
<i>Welkom</i>	1761	do.	"Op de Kamisberg." "Twee Fonteynen op de Commiesberg"
<i>Twee Fonteynen.</i>	1761	do.	
<i>Brandyagt</i>	1725	Worcester	
<i>Brandvacht</i>			
<i>Slang Hoek</i>	1722	do.	
<i>Brand Vallet</i>	1721	do.	Hot Springs. Commemorates Governor Maurits Pasques de Chavonnes.
<i>Chavonnesberg</i>	1725	do.	
<i>Smalbladeren</i>	1734		
<i>River</i>		do.	
<i>In de Nonna</i>	1747	do.	
<i>De Fontein</i>	1755	do.	
<i>De Vendutie</i>	1732		
<i>Kraal</i>		do.	
<i>Carmenaatjes</i>	1758	do.	Karbonaatjes Kraal on 1895 map.
<i>Craal.</i>			
<i>De Coega</i>	1762	do.	
<i>Canary Fontein</i>	1747	Sutherland	
<i>Vyf Fonteynen</i>	1749	do.	Marked on map 1895 as <i>Vyf Fontein.</i> "Onder Roggelants Bergh in 't Karroo." <i>Bonne Esperance.</i>
<i>Tanquas River</i>	1749	do.	
<i>Bone Esperance</i>	1751	do.	
<i>De Hoop</i>	1751	do.	
<i>Orangefontein</i>	1751	do.	
<i>Tonteldoos-</i>			
<i>fontein</i>	1751	do.	
<i>Quachafontein</i>	1752	do.	
<i>Koorlands Kloof</i>	1753	do.	
<i>Hout den Bek</i>	1755	do.	
<i>Portugaals River</i>	1759	do.	

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Year of Permit.	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks
<i>Komsberg</i>	1762	Sutherland	The Komsberg. In the Journal of de Mist's trip in 1803 is noted, "In het dal, de Kom, waarna de berg heette.
<i>Concordia</i>	1728	Robertson	
<i>'t Ziekenhuis</i>	1710	Caledon	Now Nethercourt.
<i>Visante Craal</i>	1728	do.	<i>Phesanté Kraal.</i>
<i>Amandel Rivier</i>	1727	do.	
<i>Kwartel Rivier</i>	1728	do.	Mentioned in 1725 as Quartel Rivier.
<i>Welgemoed</i>	1739	do.	
<i>Waal de Gat</i>	1739	do.	Described as "Aan deese kant van de Hangklip."
<i>Afdak</i>	1754	do.	Marked on 1895 map as <i>Afdoks River.</i>
<i>Potteberg</i>	1717	Bredasdorp	
<i>Graauwe Heuvel</i>	1714	do.	
<i>Baardscheedersbosch</i>	1730	do.	
<i>Zout Rivier</i>	1730	do.	
<i>Braakke Fontein</i>	1738		
<i>Jan Harmanz Schat</i>	1723	Swellendam	Marked on 1895 map as <i>Jan Hermanz Gat.</i>
<i>Appels Kraal</i>	1724	do.	
<i>Tradouw</i>	1725	do.	
<i>Groot Vaders Bosch</i>	1724	do.	
<i>Enko</i>	1733	do.	Marked <i>Kinko</i> on map of 1895.
<i>Swellengift</i>	1741	do.	No doubt commemorates the name of Governor Swellengrebel, <i>Gift</i> , means a gift, a present.
<i>Dipka</i>	1744	do.	
<i>Assegat Bosch</i>	1728	Riversdale	
<i>Hollebak</i>	1733	do.	
<i>Welgevonden</i>	1730	do.	
<i>Melkhout Essenbosch</i>	1729	do.	
<i>Voor Attaquas Kloof</i>	1729	do.	

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Year of Permit.	Present District in which Situated.	Remarks.
<i>Krombeks Rivier</i>	1728	Riversdale	Marked <i>Krambeks River</i> on 1895 map.
<i>Groote Brandwacht</i>	1738	do.	
<i>Klipfontein</i>	1739	do.	
<i>Elbers Kraal</i>	1742	do.	The <i>Elfers Kraal</i> on 1895 map, evidently refers to this.
<i>Elands Dans</i>	1730	Mossel Bay	
<i>Hagel Kraal</i>	1729	do.	
<i>In de Nauga</i>	1748	do.	
<i>Ruiter Bosch</i>	1754	do.	
<i>Ruiters Kraal</i>	1742	do.	
<i>Uitkyk</i>	1730	George	Described as "in 't <i>Houteniqualand</i> over de <i>Gourits Rivier</i> ."
<i>Voorburg</i>	1748	do.	
<i>Matjes River</i>	1756	do.	This is one of the early places mentioned over the <i>Attaquas Kloof</i> .
<i>Klippe Driÿt</i>	1756	do.	Described as "in het <i>Canaland</i> ."
<i>Loerie River</i>	1765	do.	This river takes its name from a species of a bird found in the woods on its banks ( <i>Paterson's Travels</i> , published in 1790).
<i>Stetsekamma</i>	1765	do.	<i>Zitzikamma River</i> .
<i>Goede Geloof</i>	1766	do.	
<i>Onser</i>	1765	Humansdorp	
<i>Voorbedacht</i>	1759	do.	
<i>Vrisch Gewaagd</i> * <i>ts half gewonnen</i>	1762	Prince Albert.	
<i>Wettevreden</i>	1762	do.	
<i>Scholse Kloof</i>	1762	do.	<i>Scholtz Kloof</i> .
<i>Bloemendal</i>	1762	do.	
<i>Klaare Stroom</i>	1763	do.	<i>Klaarstroom</i> .
<i>Angeliersbos</i>	1762	do.	
<i>Rosendaal</i>	1762	do.	
<i>Hagas</i>	1766	do.	
<i>Wolve Kraal</i>	1765	Uniondale	
<i>Avontuur</i>	1765	do.	
<i>Ongelegen</i>	1765	do.	
<i>Misgund</i>	1765	do.	

Name of Farm Physical Feature or Locality.	Present District in which Situated.	Year of Permit.	Remarks.
<i>Moordal</i>	1770 Graaff-Reinet		Marked <i>Moorden Dal</i> on 1895 map.
<i>Vergenoegd</i>	1770	do.	
<i>Slegtgenoeg</i>	1770	do.	
<i>Houd Constant</i>	1771	do.	
<i>Houd den Bek</i>	1771	do.	
<i>Uitkomst</i>	1770	do.	
<i>Cust</i>	1770 Aberdeen		Known as de Cust and marked de Rust or Plat Rust on Aber- deen Divisional map.
<i>Zee Koe Rivier</i>	1770	do.	
<i>Bruyns Hoogte</i>	1770 Somerset East		Now known as <i>Bruint- jes Hoogte</i> .
<i>Vogel Rivier</i>	1771	do.	
<i>Weltevreden</i>	1771	do.	
<i>Blyde Rivier</i>	1771	do.	

Many farm names in the district of Paarl are of French origin and recall the coming of the French Refugees to the Cape in 1688. They were settled mostly along the Berg River in the Drakenstein Valley up as far as the present town of Wellington. Many of these names denote the town or village from which the original grantees came. Although *Simondium* is a name given within recent years, it was so named to perpetuate the first French Minister, Revd. Mr. Simond, who came out with the settlers. Amongst the names still to be found are the following:

The date signifies when the farm was granted, title issued or when held on loan:

*La Terre De Luc* (1694), *Le Roque* (1694), *Languedoc* (1691), *Nantes*, formerly *Bethel* (1692), *Versailles* (1699), *Orleans* (1699), *Rhone* (1691), *La Kot* or *La Côte* (1694), *Languedoc*, near the Palmiet River (1689), *La Provence* (1694), *Cabrière* (1694), *La Concorde* now *La Concordia* (1689), *Paris* (1699), *La Motte* at Fransche Hoek (1694),

*Normandie* (1694), *Calais* (1692), *Le Plessis Marle* or *Le Plaisir Marle* (1688) *La Dauphine* (1694), *La Motte* (1690), *La Paris* (1699), *Lourmarins* (1694), *L'Arc D'Orleans* (1694), *Picardie* (1691), *Laborie* (1691), *Champagne* (1694), *La Bri* (1694), *Burgogne* or *Burgundy* (1694), *Nonpareille* (1690), *St. Omer* (1699), *Menin* (1714), *Artois* in Tulbagh district (1714). The latter was granted to Philip du Preez, but he had it on loan for eight years and in 1713 had purchased the "opstal." It had a mill on it, which is interesting as the same place to-day is noted for the milling operations which are carried on. In the same district is *Monpeliers* granted in 1714 and held for several years on loan by the grantee Jean Joubert. *Steenwerp*, over the *Twenty Four Rivers*, was granted in 1720 to Jacob Mouton who came from that place in Europe. *Lerhon* called *Terhone* in the title, in Tulbagh was issued in 1714.

In the district of Paarl there is a farm *Lekkerwyn*, literally delicious or exquisite wine. It would hardly be associated with the Frenchman LeCrévent, found spelt also as Lescervain and Lervain. Yet it is a corruption of this man's name who was generally known as Ary Lekkerwyn and to whom this place was granted in 1690.

There are farms in the Western Province, particularly in the present districts of the Cape, Stellenbosch and Paarl, which bear the name given two centuries ago. Several of these have been previously referred to. Some had been occupied on "loan" before the occupier was granted a title deed in freehold and others again were granted from the beginning. A list of the farms in these and other districts to which a title was granted would be too lengthy to give. I give below, however, some of the farm names in the three districts. In looking through the early grants we find the name inserted at a later date to that of the document. From this it might be concluded that in the early years when the farms were few in number they were referred

to simply by the owner's name. As the number increased distinctive names had to be given. Thus in the names given below it does not necessarily signify that they are quite as old as the date of the grant which I give in brackets. But we are quite safe in surmising that such names were given not many years after. Take the case of *Libertas*, the historic place of Adam Tas in the Stellenbosch district. It was granted in 1683 to Hans Jurgen Grimp whose widow married Tas. It was after Tas' liberation from incarceration in 1706 that he called his place *Libertas* which he received when he married the widow. This name, like others, is inserted at a later date to the issue of the title.

In the Cape Peninsula there are many names which were once given to large estates that have now been subdivided or built upon and the name only refers to-day to an area. *Tamboers Kloof*, a name found in the records before the close of the 17th century, was granted in 1710. I have not been able to find out the origin of this name. *Welgemeed* (1693) survives in the street of that name in Cape Town. *Zonnebloem* (1707), Sunflower, now belonging to the Diocese of Cape Town. *Roodebloem* (1692), Redflower, was once an estate of considerable size, *Altona* (1706) is now commemorated by the name of an hotel, *Stellenberg* (1697), named probably in honour of Governor Simon van der Stel, *Klassenbosch* (1693), *Constantia* granted to Simon van der Stel in 1685 does not refer to his wife's name, which was Johanna Six, *Kronendal* (1681), at Hout Bay. Of the farms in the Cape district there are several that are old in name. *Diemersdal* (1698) commemorates the Diemer family, a daughter of which the grantee, Hendrik Sneewind, married. *Phesante Kraal* (1698), *Klipheuvel* (1704), Dutch *Klip* a stone, and *Heuvel*, a hill, *Oortmans Post* (1704), owes its name to the grantee Nicolaas Oortmans, a Master of Laws, an Advocate, and Burgher Councillor of the Cape, *Bloemendal* (1702), *Bommelshoek* or *Welbeloond* was originally Jan van Bommels-

hoek, at one time a cattle post of the Company, *Clara Anna Fontein* (1702), *Doodenkraal* alias *Droogekraal* (1698), *Dead* or *Dry Kraal*, *Goede Ontmoeting* (1701), *Plattekloof* (1699), *Hoogekraal* (1707), *Hoogelegen* (1702), *Klein Oliphants Kop* (1698), *Kontermans Kloof* (1706), probably called after Hans Jacob Konterman, *Kykuit* or *Uithyk* is mentioned in 1677 as a Company's Post,<sup>8</sup> *Lichtenburg* (1704), *Lovenstein* (1701), *Maastricht* (1702), *Onrust* (1704), *Het Rondeboschje* (1705), *Het Oude Westhof* (1702), *Rustenberg* (1707).

In the Stellenbosch district there were several localities which went by special designations as, *De Kuilen*, *Bottelary* the Dutch for butlery, pantry, *Hottentots Holland*, *Moddergat*. Here are to be found several old farm names as *Kruis Pad* (1712), *Cross Road*, *Stellenberg* (1691), *Hazendal* (1704), granted to C. Hazewinkel, *Saxenberg* (1704), to J. Sax, *Nooitgedacht* (1683), *Aan Het Pad* (1687), on the Road, *By Den Wyk* (1704), *Wyk*, a refuge, a retreat or a ward or quarter (of a town), *Uit Den Wyk* (1699), *De Fortuin* (1711), *Laatste Gift* (1711), *Berg Sinai* (1688), *Vogelzang* (1702), *Meerlust* (1680). *Coetzenberg* (1682) commemorates the ancestor of the Coetsee family to whom title was issued. In the Paarl district, which includes the areas of *Drakenstein*, *Fransche Hoek* and *Wagenmaker's Vallei*, are to be found: *Zion* (1691), *Beltingan* (1695), *Goede Hoop* (1688), *Salomons Vallei* (1692), granted to the French Refugee Salomon de Gournay, *Zoete Inval* (1692); *T Slot van de Paarl* (1692), *Olyvenhout*, *Olive Wood* (1699), *Vleesbank* (1704), and *Wel Van Pas* (1699).

---

<sup>8</sup>Journal. 20.12.1677.

<sup>9</sup>Ibid 20.12.1677.

**PART III.**

**• ENGLISH PERIOD AFTER 1806.**

## I.

## NAMES FROM COLONIAL GOVERNORS AND THE ROYAL FAMILY.

At the time of the first British occupation in 1795 there were only four town names. The mountain ranges, hills and rivers had received names. Some of these were of native origin and were retained, but others were translated or given new names by the Dutch. Many localities were named, around which to-day villages and towns have sprung up in the passing of time. For instance, van Riebeeck's vineyard plot — Wynberg — is a well known town in the Cape Peninsula; the round grove of thorns — Rondebosch — has also flourished into a township. At the foot of the Picquetberg, known to the early explorers who kept this mountain as a guide, has sprung up a well known town. The few year's duration of the British occupation made no great addition to the nomenclature of the Cape. *Fort Frederick*, built near the present site of Port Elizabeth in 1799 as an outpost for troops to operate in the eastern portion of the Colony, commemorates the Duke of York. The hill overlooking the landing place at Algoa Bay was chosen as the site for the erection of a wooden blockhouse. A stone redoubt of eighty feet square was built and named Fort Frederick and in it were garrisoned three hundred and fifty men. This redoubt still stands. By the Treaty of Amiens the Cape was transferred to the Batavian Government in 1803 and remained in their hands until retaken by the British in 1806. The two town names, Uitenhage and Tulbagh, added during this short time, have been referred to. Several mission stations were established and will be referred to further on. After the capitulation of the Cape in January 1806 a new

stage in the development of place names took place. In the first half of the century a great number of town and village names commemorate English royalty, Cape Governors or their family connections, British statesmen and several officials of the Cape Government. *Caledon* is one of the first towns which was called after a Governor of the British period. du Pre Alexander, second Earl of Caledon, a representative Irish Peer, came out in 1807 and returned to England in 1811. He was well liked by the colonists who had a kindly feeling for him. Two years after he left his successor, Sir John Cradock, issued a Government notice saying that "as a mark of respect to the Earl of Caledon, late Governor of this settlement . . . the village formerly known by the name of the *Zwarteberg* . . . shall in future be called Caledon."<sup>1</sup> This place is famous to-day for its hot springs and a century before its naming had been much sought after by invalids suffering from rheumatism and kindred ailments. In 1709 Ferdinardus Appel was the first to obtain a permit from the Government to graze his cattle at "de Warme water" (the hot springs). The following year he was granted twelve morgen of ground in the vicinity as he was prepared to put up a place of accommodation for those seeking the benefit of the waters. In course of time the locality was known as *Zwarteberg* from the name of the mountain from which the springs received their water. The black colour of the stones on the mountain which looked like burnt smithy coals gave the origin of the mountain name. In 1811 a deputy Landdrost of Swellendam was stationed here and shortly after the Rev. M. C. Vos was appointed to the newly established congregation. Governor Caledon's name is further perpetuated by the *Caledon River*, in the Orange Free State which was given by Colonel Collins on his trip in 1809.

The same traveller, on the same occasion, honoured the name of the Hon. Henry George Grey, Commander of the Forces,

---

<sup>1</sup>Government Advertisement, 31.12.1813.

and Ly- Governor, by giving it to a river which falls into the Orange River. Collins, in his diary, says: "As no colonists had been here before, and the country was destitute of inhabitants from whom we could learn the name of the river, if it had any, we honoured it with that of *Greys River*."<sup>2</sup> But those who seek for this river, on the map to-day would find it a fruitless task as the word *Grgy* has become corrupted into *Kraai* (Dutch for a crow), a river found flowing through the district of Aliwal North. In Stockenstrom's *Autobiography*<sup>3</sup> we read that "To this stream the Commissioner-General gave the name *Greys River* (since corrupted into *Kraai River*) after General George Grey, then Commanding the troops and afterwards acting Governor of the Colony." Stockenstrom had accompanied Collins' party.

The next British Governor was Sir John Cradock, who came out in 1811 and left in 1814. His name is kept in memory by the important town of *Cradock* in the Eastern Province. Sir John conceived that this name should be given at the particular request of the Landdrost and Heemraden of Graaff-Reinet. Two years previously a Sub-Drostdy of Graaff-Reinet had been established to this area with a court at *Van Staden's Dam* on the Fish River. Later the Deputy Landdrost, Andries Stockenstrom, an ensign in the Cape Regiment, moved higher up to *Driefontein*, the "loan" place of Willem Jacob van Heerden, whose lease was cancelled and he duly compensated. Here a village was laid out and named *Cradock*.<sup>4</sup>

The town and district of *Clanwilliam* was named in honour of the first Earl of Clanwilliam, father-in-law of Sir John Cradock in 1814.<sup>5</sup> It had previously borne the name of *Jan Dissels Vlei*, called after an agriculturist who lived "in de Renosterbosch aan de Piquetbergen."<sup>6</sup> The *Opstal* of the farm Jan Dissels,

<sup>2</sup>Records of Cape Colony, VII.25.

<sup>3</sup>1.17.

<sup>4</sup>Government Notice 21.1.1814.

<sup>5</sup>Government Advertisement 14.1.1814.

<sup>6</sup>Wildschut Boek.

which was then in the hands of Mr. S. van Reenen, was bought by the Government in 1808<sup>7</sup> and a Deputy Landdrost under the Landdrost of Tulbagh was placed here. Later on when the Drostdy of Tulbagh was removed in 1822 to Worcester, Clanwilliam formed a sub-district of the latter until 1837 when it became a district of its own.

The Governor to succeed Cradock was Lord Charles Somerset, who held office until 1826. His name and those of several of his family are perpetuated in the names of at least six places in various centres of the Cape Province. It is also recalled in the street names of many towns. Lt.-General Lord Charles Henry Somerset was the second son of the Duke of Beaufort and was a brother to the Marquis of Worcester. The family name of Beaufort has been given to three places in South Africa, *Port Beaufort*, *Beaufort West* and *Fort Beaufort*. His own name is commemorated in *Somerset West* and *Somerset East*, while *Worcester* is called after the Marquis. At the mouth of the Breede river is situated *Port Beaufort* and about 1817 a coasting trade with Cape Town was commenced. Dr. Theal in referring to the naming of this place has aptly written "Lord Charles Somerset, who was rapidly covering the map of the Colony with the titles of his family." . . . In 1818 circumstances necessitated that the parts of the district of Graaff-Reinet and Tulbagh known by the names of *Gouph* and *Nieuwveld* should be placed more immediately under the eye and control of a local Magistracy. They were at this time situated a great distance from the seats of their respective Landdrosts. This part, the northern border of the Colony, had always been occupied by people of nomadic habits, and "it appears that more irregularity exists than perhaps in any other part of this extensive Settlement." The *Opstals*

<sup>7</sup>Jan Andries Dissel of Oostvriesland, born about 1690, and his wife Maria Vosloo, were living at "de soogenoemde, Graineberg" in 1726, when they made their joint will.

<sup>8</sup>Spelt in the Proclamation as Ghouph and in 1749 as Kouph.

<sup>9</sup>Col. Secy. to J. Baird, Dep. Landdrost, 4.12.1818. Records XII.80.

of the farms *Hooivlakte* close to the Nieuweveld Mountains, belonging to the Commandant Abraham de Klerk, "a loan" farm granted as early as 1760, and *Bosjesmansberg*, were purchased and the leases cancelled. On *Hooivlakte* a township was laid out and a Deputy Landdrost, under the Landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, was stationed there. To this place the name of *Beaufort West* was given.<sup>10</sup> The new functionary was instructed to establish a market at *Klip* or *Kookfontein*, in order to induce wandering Bushmen and Bastards to settle within the Colony, instead of going to the territory north of the Orange River.<sup>11</sup> In 1820 a new congregation was formed and the Rev. John Taylor appointed. Yet another town owes its name to the ducal family of Beaufort. *Fort Beaufort* was at first a blockhouse built in 1822 by Colonel Scott, who stationed some troops on the open country near the mountains in which the Kaffir Chief Maqomo had ensconced himself. This was done to place a check upon the Chief and as far as possible to observe his movements.<sup>12</sup>

During the first half of the 19th century a number of villages came into being. The country was beginning to expand and after the commencement of proper road making in 1843 the prosperity of the Colony increased. Areas that had been cut off from those parts where a market could be reached were now brought more in direct touch with each other. Many of these places had their origin in the erection of a place of worship followed by the establishment of an independent congregation. These were followed by government officials. On the other hand some places first had their officers of justice, as in the instance of Beaufort West. Here it was necessary for a magistracy to be established in order that law and order might be established. The community at Hottentots Holland, in the district of Stellenbosch, decided in 1813 to erect a church of

<sup>10</sup>Proclamation 27.11.1818.

<sup>11</sup>Ibid.

<sup>12</sup>Cory "Rise of South Africa." 2.147.

their own. Hitherto they had been satisfied with periodical services by the minister of Stellenbosch. A committee, appointed to carry out this object, purchased the estate *Cloetenburg* from Mr. Douw Gerbrand Steyn. In 1820 the church was opened for use, a congregation distinct from that of Stellenbosch having been formed the previous year. Early in 1822 a village, to which the name of *Somerset West* was given, was laid out. When Governor van Plettenberg made his notable trip through the Colony in 1778 he came to the *Boschberg* on his homeward journey, close to where the farmer Willem Prinsloo had settled. About 1815 the tract of land had been divided into two "loan" places occupied by farmers named Triegard and Bester. Here Lord Charles Somerset established an agricultural farm. The two farm leases were cancelled and Dr. Mackrill, a botanist of some note, was placed in charge of the farm which was called *Somerset Farm*. This was broken up in 1825 and a new Drostdy "in Bruintjes Hoogte, on the spot hitherto known by the name of Somerset Farm was established and given the name of *Somerset East*." The sub-Drostdy of Cradock was abolished and the officials removed to Somerset.<sup>18</sup> The buildings of the farm were converted into offices and dwellings. In notifying these changes to the Secretary of State Lord Charles Somerset wrote: ". . . I have considered that a town of considerable importance might be formed where the Government Farm (called the Somerset Farm) has hitherto been established . . . . I have therefore had a plan of the town made out, and nearly three hundred erven (or building lots) consisting of 150 feet in front and 450 feet in depth have already been measured . . . . In order to give encouragement to this new town, I have removed the establishment of the Deputy Drostdy of Cradock (a miserable place which never could advance) including also a portion of the northern side of the

---

<sup>18</sup>Government Advertisement 11.3.1825.

Albany District, which was inconveniently extensive, to Somerset which I have established as a Drostdy." He goes on to say that at present it was not intended to go to any considerable expense in converting the buildings of the farm to the purposes of a Magistracy. ". . . with a very slight alteration a large store may be converted into a very commodious temporary church, a tan house into a very good school, and a strong built wagon house into a prison. Other dwellings will accommodate the officers attached to a drostdy."<sup>14</sup>

In 1819 the buildings on the two "loan" farms *Langerug* and *Roodedraai* in the valley of the Breede River were bought from the brothers du Toit. At *Roodedraai* the Governor placed a Deputy Landdrost under the Landdrost of Tulbagh and called the place *Worcester*,<sup>15</sup> in honour of his brother, the Marquis of Worcester. He intended to lay out a village here, but the sale of erven was delayed until some months later. One hundred and forty-four erven each two-thirds of a morgen were marked out comprising twenty-four blocks with broad streets between them. The first sale of the plots took place on the 28th and 29th February 1820 when eighty-nine were sold. Two erven had been kept out for a Drostdy building and a church. Shortly after the Government undertook to enclose the erven with trees. In 1822 Worcester was made the seat of the Landdrost who had been removed from Tulbagh.<sup>16</sup>

In February 1825 Mr. Donald Moodie was appointed to be Government Resident at *Port Frances*, "being the port at the mouth of the *Kowie*."<sup>17</sup> This place name honoured the wife of Lt.-Colonel Henry Somerset, son of the Governor. It was

<sup>14</sup>Records XX. 403.

<sup>15</sup>See Government Gazette of 6.11.1819.

<sup>16</sup>For the beginning of Worcester see lecture delivered by the writer and reported in the "Worcester Standard" 13.12.1919.

<sup>17</sup>Notice 20.2.1825.

re-named in 1860 *Port Alfred* at the request of the inhabitants to honour Prince Alfred, the second son of Queen Victoria, who was then on a visit to South Africa.

In 1820 Sir Rufane Shawe Donkin became acting Governor while Lord Charles Somerset was away in England on leave. His wife Elizabeth Donkin had died in 1818 at Meerut in India and to commemorate her memory he gave her name "to the rising town at the bottom of Algoa Bay" which he called *Port Elizabeth*.<sup>18</sup> On the hill overlooking the bay he erected a monument in the shape of a stone pyramid in further remembrance of his deceased wife. In 1813 Sir John Cradock had offered building lots at the bay "almost for nothing." They remained valueless until 1820 when the British Settlers arrived. "The arrival of the Settlers," says Donkin,<sup>19</sup> "gave me at once the hope that the place which I afterwards named "Port Elizabeth," at the bottom of Algoa Bay, might be made a place of value and importance to the Colony, and I encouraged such of the Settlers as had any Capital to build there, in order to have a point of export for their produce from Albany." He had hoped that the place would have become a resort of invalids from India. In the district of Clanwilliam is *Donkin Bay* and *Donkin Bay Flats*, no doubt commemorative of this Governor.

The name of the Governor Lt.-General Sir Galbraith Lowry Cole has been perpetuated in one or two place names. He came out in 1828 and left in 1833. At the time of his arrival there were three passages over the first mountain ranges by which travellers could reach the interior. The old road used by the 18th century pioneers through the *Tulbagh* or *Roodezand Kloof*, the road through the *Fransche Hoek Pass*, constructed by soldiers and opened in 1824 for wagon traffic, and the road

<sup>18</sup>Government Advertisement 23.6.1820.

<sup>19</sup>Letter 29.9.1822 of Donkin. Records of Cape Colony XV. 72.

over the *Hottentots Holland Kloof*. The second opened up the line of communication between Cape Town and Worcester and shortened the journey to Graaff-Reinet by about forty miles. The last one was used by the people living along the southern coast. Its passage had always been a difficult one and the travellers ran the risk of having their wagons broken and their cattle killed. Since the 17th century it had been used and often the wagons had to be unloaded and dragged up empty over the precipitous sides, passing over boulders, jolting and jarring as they went along. The goods were carried by slaves or packed on the backs of the oxen. The beasts suffered considerably, their hoofs being torn by the jagged stones and rocks which often made them bleed profusely.<sup>20</sup> Sir Lowry Cole saw the necessity of having good roads which meant prosperity to the country. Major (afterwards Colonel) Charles Cornwallis Michell, the first Surveyor-General, was asked to report whether the road over the Hottentots Holland range could not be made safe at a moderate outlay. He reported that for about £7,000 a safe road with easy gradients could be constructed. The Governor had the work put in hand, but his action did not receive the support of the Secretary of State. As a result the merchants of Cape Town guaranteed the Governor against personal loss. Upon further representations the Secretary allowed the work to be carried on and the road was opened in 1830 and named *Sir Lowry's Pass* in honour of the Governor. Heavily laden wagons could now pass over the mountain in ease and safety.

During the last two decades of the 18th century there was a mountain which appears to have been indifferently called *Toverberg* or *Toornberg*. The first is from the Dutch *Toover*, to conjure, to practise magic and the second from the Dutch *Toorn*, a tower. Barrow in his *Travels* has described it as *Towerberg*

---

<sup>20</sup>See interesting account in *Attestation* 1724-1725.

and says, "It stood quite alone on the middle of a plain; was visible for more than twenty miles from every point of the compass; presented the form of a truncated cone from whatever situation it was seen; and the third tier of sandstone strata that capped its summit appeared as a mass of masonry, a fortification on an eminence that could not be less than a thousand feet high. As a distinction from those of an inferior size we gave it the name of Towerberg, because this mountain,

" . . . . above the rest,

In shape and gesture proudly eminent,  
Stood like a tower."

On the map which accompanies the Dutch edition of Barrow, the place is marked as Toornberg, but in the map in Lichtenstein's Travels it is referred to as Tooverberg. In the official map of the Cape Colony<sup>21</sup> it is marked as Torenberg. Sir George Cory in his "Rise of South Africa" refers to it as Toornberg.<sup>22</sup> However, shortly after Rev. Andrew Murray was appointed as clergyman of Graaff-Reinet in 1822 he began to hold periodical services at this place where several farmers had begun to settle. Two years later a congregation was formed. A letter dated the 16th September 1829, from the churchwardens, is very enlightening as to the names given to this locality. They "suggest that the place referred to in this memorial, called by some Towerberg, by others Toornberg, and by many more Torenberg, should henceforth be designed Coleshill, in commemoration of your Excellency's name and visit to this part of the Colony."<sup>23</sup> The Governor consented and the place became known as Coleshill, a village being laid out in 1830. The first building lots were sold on the 29th November of that year, the same day that the foundation stone of the Dutch Church was laid with

<sup>20</sup>Dated 1895.

<sup>21</sup>1.129.

<sup>22</sup>Letters from Consistories Col: Office Records. Vol. 612.

Masonic honours. The "truncated cone" as Barrow rightly described the prominent hill near the town is now known as *Coleskop* and was the scene of heavy fighting during the Anglo-Boer War.

The name *Zwartland*, referring to the present district of Malmesbury, has already been mentioned.<sup>24</sup> In the Journal of 1705 we read of natives coming from "Swarteland,"<sup>25</sup> and a permit being granted to Hendrik Muller in 1706 to hunt "Aan't Swarteland of de Groenekloof."<sup>26</sup> When van Imhoff was here in 1743 he issued instructions for the establishment of two new churches in the outlying districts. The site of the one was in the district known as Zwartland which was then, as now, one of the best wheat producing districts. The most suitable place was the farm occupied by the widow Pieter van der Westhuizen who offered it to the Government. This was accepted in 1744<sup>27</sup> and she received in exchange another farm and was paid £174 for the buildings on her place. The following year a consistory was formed. This church place was known as Zwartlands Kerk. In 1828, owing to the increase of population in the Cape district it became necessary to establish a village here and in November of that year the first building lots were sold. The new village was given the name of *Malmesbury* on the 21st May 1829<sup>28</sup> in honour of the father-in-law of Sir Lowry Cole.

On the 1st August 1836 the inhabitants of Tygerberg and Koeberg requested Sir Benjamin D'Urban, Governor from 1834 to 1846, that the village in which their church was situated and hitherto known as *Pampoenekraal* may be called *D'Urban*.<sup>29</sup> He gave his consent. To-day it is called *Durbanville*, to dis-

<sup>24</sup>Page 43.

<sup>25</sup>26.9.1705.

<sup>26</sup>Wildschuts Boek.

<sup>27</sup>Resolutions 16.6.1744.

<sup>28</sup>Notice in Government Gazette.

<sup>29</sup>Government Notice 30.1.1836.

tinguish it from the town of Durban, established some years later in Natal.

It will be observed that several of the places which were founded had their origin either in the establishment of a magistracy or of a congregation. The people living in the southern part of Swellendam were desirous to have their own church. Two committees were formed, one of which purchased the farm *Langefontein* and the other the farm *Klipdrift*. The first one erected a church and sold building sites for a village and petitioned the Governor, Sir George Napier, to give it a name. He called it *Bredasdorp* after the Hon. Michiel van Breda, a member of the Legislative Council. This was in 1838. The other committee did likewise and sold their village erven a few months later. On their request to the Governor to allow his name to be given to the new village he acknowledged the honour they did him but suggested whether it would not be better to call it Napier without the addition of the word *dorp* (meaning a village), unless they should prefer to name it "Stoneford" which was a translation of its present application (*Klip* — a stone, *drift* — a ford). However, by a notice of the 5th March 1840 it was called *Napier*.<sup>80</sup>

Sir Peregrine Maitland, a military officer of distinction, was at the head of the Government from 1843 to 1847. His name is honoured by *Maitland*, a town about five miles from Cape Town.

*Richmond* was on part of the farm *Driefontein*, where a new congregation of the Dutch church was formed in 1843. Village lots were sold the following year. The members of the consistory asked Sir Peregrine Maitland to allow the village to be called after him but he would not give his consent. They asked that it might be called *Richmond* in honour of his wife's

---

<sup>80</sup>Letter 28.2.1840 from Secretary to Government.

father. He gave his approval to this in Government Notice of the 29th November 1844.

Governor Maitland appears to have had some aversion to allowing his name to be given to a place. In 1845 there were living about three hundred families of farmers between the Stormberg Spruit and the Kraai River. They resolved to erect a church, and it was decided that a farm should be bought and a village laid out. The committee appointed by them purchased in 1846 the farm *Klipfontein* on the Stormberg Spruit. The Governor was requested to give his name to the contemplated village, but Maitland refused. "The committee," says Theal, "thereupon thereupon gave the place the democratic name of *Burghersdorp*."

Sir Harry Smith, another distinguished soldier, was here with the British Army from 1829 to 1840, and then returned to England. He was sent out later as Governor and from 1847 to 1852 held that office. His name as well as that of his wife, has been given to several places in various provinces of South Africa, e.g., *Harrismith* in the Orange Free State, and *Ladysmith* in Natal. His victory of Aliwal against the Sikhs in India in 1846 has been perpetuated in places as *Aliwal North*, on the banks of the Orange River and founded in May 1849, the district being formed in 1855, and *Aliwal South*, in the district of Mossel Bay. In the district of Swellendam a new parish called *Lady Smith* was established in 1851<sup>21</sup> in honour of his lady. This name was later on written as *Ladismith*, no doubt to prevent confusion with the one in Natal. In 1876 the Magisterial district of Lady or Ladismith was created. He has further perpetuated his wife's name in *Juanasburg*, a military village established in the Tyumie Valley. She was a lady of Spanish birth. *Alice*, it is said, was called after his sister, Mrs. Sargent, but a government notice of 23 December, 1847, intimated that the district of Victoria had been created and that the rising town

<sup>21</sup>Government Notice 20.3.1851.

of "Alice Town" was to be the seat of magistracy. In January of that year a letter was dated by the Superintendent of Police in Kaffirland, Lt. Davies, as from Alice. He had formerly addressed his official letters as from *Blockdrift*. Alice was therefore in existence some time before Sir Harry Smith came out as Governor. It is said that the place commemorated the name of Queen Victoria's daughter, which seems reasonable to suppose as the district itself bore the Queen's name.

The names of governors of more recent years are also to be found in our nomenclature. *Cathcart* owes its name to Governor Lt.-General the Hon. George Cathcart. Sir George Grey, Governor from 1854 to 1861, is remembered in *Greyton*. Huguenot railway station was until recent years called *Lady Grey*. The bridge over the Berg River close to this station, is called *Lady Grey Bridge*, and the street at this part of Paarl commemorates the lady in question. *Lady Grey*, in the district of Aliwal North, bears her name, and *McGregor*, in the Robertson district, was formerly known as *Lady Grey*. *Grey's Pass* in the Clanwilliam district honours the Governor. The village of *Darling* owes its name to Charles Henry Darling, head of the government from 1852-1854.

Several names in the Cape Province bear those of the royal family of Great Britain. The oldest of these is *George*, called after King George III. The new district named in 1811 was cut off from that of Swellendam. The latter had been too vast an area for the Landdrost to control and his drostdy or residency was not centrally situated, being to the one end of the district. In order to overcome the inconveniences and irregularities that arose the government formed this new district on the 23rd April 1811<sup>32</sup>. The building erven for the town of George were sold in October of the same year. The first Landdrost, Mr. A. G. van Kervel, was stationed at the old Govern-

---

<sup>32</sup>Proclamation, 23.4.1811.

ment Post of Outeniqualand. *Prince Albert* was called after Queen Victoria's consort in 1845. The town formed part of the old farm *Kweek Vallei* mentioned in van Plettenberg's Journal of 1778. In 1841 the people of the *Zwartberg*, the name of the range of mountains close to Prince Albert, formed a separate congregation from that of Beaufort West. A committee purchased *Kweek Vallei* and laid out a village and built a church and parsonage. In 1842 the first minister was appointed and by a proclamation of the 31st July 1845 the parish of *Zwartberg* was named Prince Albert. Another place commemorating the Queen's consort is the district of *Albert*, the boundaries of which were first defined in 1848. The town of *Victoria West* named in 1844,<sup>83</sup> and the division of *Victoria East* named in 1847,<sup>84</sup> were called after Queen Victoria. The first place was situated on the farm *Zeehoegat* and part of *Kapokfontein*. *King William's Town*, on the eastern bank of the Buffalo River, founded on the 24th May 1835, is named after King William IV. Sir Benjamin Durban writing to Col. John Bell in connection with the naming of this place said, "with God's Blessing, if what I have done be confirmed at home, at some future period, here will spring up a beautiful provincial town."<sup>85</sup> *Port Alfred* recalls the visit to South Africa in 1860 of Queen Victoria's son, and *Prince Alfred Hamlet* in the Ceres district comes from the same source. On the site of the present town of *Adelaide*, a large camp was built in 1834 by Captain Armstrong, which he called *Fort Adelaide*. On the 16th May 1835 a new territory named the *Province of Queen Adelaide* was annexed to the British possessions. Both these places were called after the spouse of King William IV.

---

<sup>83</sup>Government Notice 25.9.1844.

<sup>84</sup>Proclamation 23.12.1847.

<sup>85</sup>"Rise of South Africa." Cory. 3.169.

## II

## NAMES FROM BRITISH AND COLONIAL STATESMEN AND OFFICIALS.,

The names of both British and Colonial statesmen and of government officials are found commemorated in South African Place Names. It is interesting in studying the nomenclature of the Dominions of the British Empire to find many names that are common to all. Some British statesmen, often the Secretary of State, or a member of the House of Commons who had upheld the cause of the Colonies, as they were formerly called, has had his name perpetuated in the Dominions. Lord Bathurst was Secretary of State for the Colonies from 1812<sup>1</sup> to 1827 and when the British Settlers came to South Africa in 1820 Sir Rufane Donkin selected the site for a village in the centre of the area in which they were located. This he named *Bathurst* in honour of the above. In 1866 the Earl of Carnarvon succeeded to the office of Secretary of State for the Colonies. The Magisterial district of *Carnarvon*, from which the town takes its name, was constituted in 1874<sup>2</sup> and named after him. When the Earl of Kimberley was Secretary of State, the Imperial authorities approved of Griqualand West being enacted a crown colony. One of the three electoral divisions was *Kimberley*<sup>3</sup> which honoured the Secretary of State. The town of that name which had been previously known as *Colesberg*, was made the seat of Government of the new Colony. At a later date *Beaconsfield* received its name after Disraeli, Lord Beaconsfield.

<sup>1</sup>Government Notice 23.9.1874.

<sup>2</sup>Letters Patent 17.7.1873.

The Duke of Wellington's name was given in 1840 to the town of *Wellington*. The people living on the surrounding farms were desirous of having a church of their own. They had to go to Paarl for divine service. In 1838 they purchased for £1575 by subscription part of the farm *Champagne*, one of the farms commemorative of the French Refugees. The following year a church was erected and opened in 1840. The Governor, Sir George Napier, was asked to permit his name to be given to the new village, but the request came too late. He was then asked to allow it to be called Blencowe in honour of his father-in-law, but declined the honour. Sir George was then petitioned to give it a name which he did by calling it *Wellington* and issued a notice on the 26th March 1840 in the Government Gazette. On the original petition the Governor initialled the pencilled note "call it *Wellington*. It is a disgrace to this Colony that not a place within it bears that name."<sup>3</sup>

Names that refer to South African statesmen or government officials are found in the following. In 1843 John Montagu became Secretary to Government. He promoted the system of constructing roads in the Colony by means of convict labour. This was in the same year that he took office and from when it may be said the first serious effort was made to improve the lines of communication and a Central Road Board established. The first works undertaken were the making of a good road over *Cradock's Pass*, which name honoured Sir John Cradock, and a hard road over the Cape Flats. The first named was changed to *Montagu Pass* which was proclaimed on the 23rd February 1848 as a main road. This line of road was the main road to Grahams Town and the direct route between Mossel Bay and

---

<sup>3</sup>See Letters Received from Consistories, Clergymen and Missionaries 1840, No. 33, and Letters Despatched "Ecclesiastical and Schools" p. 375. Publication of name on 26.3.1840.

the interior of the Colony. The old road was a formidable one; it was precipitous, full of ruts and rocky, in parts it was almost perpendicular and was a great barrier to the communication inland. It seemed incredible that any vehicle could cross it and the undertaking was a perilous one. The farmer, rather than risk this pass, went to Grahams Town with his produce. The opening up of the new pass gave an impetus to trade. The farmer of the present Oudtshoorn district found an outlet for his produce and was saved the labour and expense of having his half filled wagon dragged over a dangerous road. The heaviest-loaded wagon was now able to go from top to bottom without locking a wheel, and a single horse with a small cart could go at a good pace up or down the whole length. Along the hard road constructed over the flats between Salt River and the present Bellville, a bridge over the Liesbeek was called *Montagu Bridge*. The town and district of *Montagu* also honour his memory.

The mention of John Montagu's name, in connection with the road making epoch in South African history, recalls the names of other government officials who assisted in this work and whose names have been commemorated. One of the early mentioned names is that of Colonel Charles Michell. He was appointed in 1828 to the newly created office of Surveyor-General and Civil Engineer of the Cape Colony. Major Michell (as he was then) had seen much fighting in Portugal in which country his father had served with distinction. He had been present at the Battle of Waterloo. Not only was he an engineer, but also a good draughtsman, having studied that art under Bartolozzi. Shortly after his arrival he undertook the work connected with the construction of Sir Lowry's Pass (see page 127). Colonel Michell's name has been remembered by *Michell's Pass*, on the way to Ceres. It was known during the 18th century as *Mostert's Hoek*, in 1778 by van Plettenberg as *Mostert's Hoek*.

and mentioned in 1792 as *Jan Mostert's Hoek*. This new road, which was commenced in 1846 and completed a few years later, cost approximately £23,000. It opened up the Roggeveld, Hantam (now Calvinia), the Warm and the Cold Bokkeveld. "In place of the old road through Mostert's Hoek, one of the worst and most dangerous in the Colony, a safe and easy pass has now been substituted," wrote an official at this time. Another name to be remembered with road making is that of Andrew Geddes Bain. Of Scotch descent he came to this country about 1816 at the age of twenty three. His early colonial life was spent in exploring the interior, which he penetrated as far as the Limpopo, an undertaking attended by great risks in those days. He was successively "trader, explorer, geologist and road-maker." It was written of him that by the Cape Colonists he must always be remembered as 'the prince of road-makers.' As early as 1836 he began the construction of the *Queens Road*, in the Eastern Province. His name is best remembered by *Bains Kloof*, commenced in 1849 and completed in 1853. This shortened the route from Cape Town to Worcester by between thirty and forty miles, and did away with the long, tedious and round about way through the Tulbagh Kloof.<sup>4</sup>

When referring to the routes taken by early exploring parties the Attaquas Kloof was mentioned. This was near the present *Robinsons Pass* which commemorates a Deputy Colonial Engineer and Commissioner of Roads of that name. *Garcia* and *Southey Passes* were also named after government officials.

The town of *Riversdale* named by Government Notice of the 30th August 1838 was called after Harry Rivers who had become Magistrate of Swellendam in 1834, and was afterwards Treasurer-General of the Cape Colony. In the same year

---

<sup>4</sup>For early history of road-making see "Romance of our Roads" by C. Graham Botha, a series of articles in the *Cape Times*, commencing February, 1923.

that this town was named, *Bredasdorp* was founded. It was called after the Hon. Michiel van Breda, see page 130, and is one of the earliest instances of a village being called after a South African born inhabitant. Names which are of more recent date are *Williston*, named after Hampden Willis, Under Colonial Secretary; *Molteno* after Sir John Molteno, the first Prime Minister of the Cape Colony under responsible Government; *Merriman*, after the Rt. Honourable J. X. Merriman. *Rawsonville* recalls another Secretary to Government, Rawson W. Rawson. *Gordonia* and *Upington* are named after two prominent parliamentarians of last century Sir Gordon Sprigg and Sir Thomas Upington, both of whom held the office of Prime Minister. *Porterville* perpetuates the name of William Porter, Attorney-General from 1839 to 1866.

## III.

NAMES COMMEMORATING THE ARMY AND  
NAVY, THE GERMAN LEGION.

The history of the Eastern Province consists, for the greater part of the 19th century, to some extent, of military activities against the natives. It is curious that one of the most characteristic features of early South African history was native trouble. In the very early days it was first the Hottentots and this was followed during the 18th century by the constant raids made by the Bushmen. Finally the Kaffirs were the next cause of trouble to the Europeans. Invasions into the Colony by the latter at various times led to war. Notwithstanding the boundaries between them and the Colony being clearly defined it was difficult to restrain them from coming into the white man's area. The raiding of the European's cattle, the burning of his homestead and frequently the murdering of his family was of constant occurrence. The wars waged were so frequent that they were given numbers and we speak of the First, Second, Third, and so on, Kaffir War. They played an important part in the early 19th century history of South Africa. It is owing to the military efforts to keep the natives in check that we find to-day many place names, especially in the Eastern Province, which refer to or commemorate the names of military notables.

In 1812 the headquarters of the British troops were at a relinquished farm, once the property of a Lucas Meyer. This had been chosen by Lt.-Colonel John Graham who had successfully driven the natives over the Colonial boundary, the Fish River, with the aid of a combined force of British troops

and colonial burghers. The war had been known as the Fourth Kaffir war. The cantonment was close to the source of the Kowie River and about twenty-five miles from the coast. In August 1812 the Governor gave it the name of *Grahams Town* "in testimony of His Excellency's respect for the services of Lieutenant-Colonel Graham, through whose able exertions the Caffre Tribes have been expelled from that valuable District." (i.e., the *Zuurveld*). The 1820 British Settlers were located in the *Zuurveld* named in 1814 as the District of *Albany* called after Albany in New York State as the father of Colonel J. Cuyler, Landdrost of Uitenhage, had been Mayor of that city. For several generations the Settlers and the border farmers of Dutch origin were constantly troubled by the Kaffirs and to stop the incursions of the latter the authorities from time to time erected military forts in which troops were permanently stationed. The buildings of a number of these posts still exist. The names given to them were later on transferred to a town or village which grew up in course of time. Some of these names refer to present day farms.

After the Fifth Kaffir War *Fort Willshire*, on the bank of the Keiskamma River, was commenced in 1819. It was called after Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Willshire of the 38th Regiment who succeeded to the command of the troops fighting against Ndlambe during the Fifth Kaffir War. During the Sixth Kaffir War, 1834-5 the Governor, Sir Benjamin Durban, had constructed a number of small forts in the Province of Queen Adelaide. These were *Fort Armstrong*, which protected the Kat River Settlement, and was named after Captain A. B. Armstrong, of the Cape Mounted Rifles; *Fort Beresford*, on the upper Buffalo River, called after the Governor's Aide-*de*-Camp, Captain G. de la Poer Beresford; *Fort Brown*, formerly

---

<sup>1</sup>Government Advertisement 14.8.1812. For an account of the origin and naming of this town see Cory 1.247—250.

*Hermanus Kraal*, called so from Hermanus Xogomesh, a Hottentot rebel, where a small military post had been before 1835. Hermanus Kraal is mentioned in the Journal of Landdrost Faure to the Kaffirland in 1793. It was situated at that drift where the main road from Grahams Town to Fort Beaufort crosses the Fish River;<sup>2</sup> *Fort Cox*, on the upper Keiskamma, named after Major William Cox of the 75th Regiment; *Fort Montgomery Williams*, on the western bank of the same river which honours Lieutenant Montgomery Williams of the Royal Engineers, who planned and superintended the construction of these forts<sup>3</sup> and *Fort Murray* on the Buffalo River named after the Colonel of the 72nd Highlanders. This was very near Mount Coke and about five miles from the ruins known to-day as *Fort Murray*.<sup>4</sup> *Fort Peddie*, between the Fish and the Keiskamma Rivers, recalls the name of Lt.-Colonel John Peddie of the 72nd Regiment and the present town of *Peddie* takes its name therefrom. The district of that name was created in 1848. *Fort Thomson*, situated on the outskirts of the town of Alice, which is still in a fairly good state of preservation, was called in honour of Lt.-Colonel R. T. Thomson, Officer Commanding the Royal Engineers. *Fort Warden*, on the Impotshana, recalls the name of Captain, afterwards Major Henry Douglas Warden, of the Cape Mounted Rifles. He was later on connected with the early history of the Orange Free State as British Resident. The great battle of Waterloo has been commemorated in the names of these defences in *Fort Waterloo*, and the name of the hero of that fight is found in *Fort Wellington*, near the source of the Gonubie River. *Fort White*, on the Debe River, honoured Major Thomas Charles White, of the Grahamstown Volunteers, "one of the best educated and most enterprising of the British Settlers of 1020" who was killed in 1835 by the Xosas near

---

<sup>2</sup>Cory, 3.188.

<sup>3</sup>Cory, 3.186.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid 3.184.

the Bashee River. Most of these defences were abandoned about 1836 after the Sixth Kaffir War. Some were used on a later occasion as *Fort Armstrong* during the Eighth Kaffir War 1850-53; *Forts Peddie* and *Cox* in 1846 and *Forts Waterloo*, *White* and *Wellington* in the following year. The first Fort Wellington was abandoned in 1836 and never occupied again, but another built in 1847 on the *Tshalumna River* and given its name. Of all these military defences put up at this time Fort Cox was the most important from its strategic position. It occupied the most daring and dangerous position because of its proximity to the Kaffir stronghold. Its ruins can still be seen. It was here that Sir Harry Smith was shut up by the Kaffirs and kept a prisoner for a while in 1851.

During the Seventh Kaffir War, 1846-7, several forts were erected, as *Fort Dacres* at the mouth of the Fish River, called after Rear Admiral James Richard Dacres, Commander-in-Chief of the Cape Naval Station; *Fort Glamorgan* on the mouth of the Buffalo River (now East London); *Fort Hare* on the Tyumie, named after Lt.-Colonel John Hare of the 27th Regiment, who, in 1838 had been Acting Lieutenant-Governor of the Eastern Province, and in July and in August 1846, commanded the first division of the Army engaged in this war.

In 1841 a proposal was put forward to establish military villages along the Colonial frontier as a means of defence against the Kaffirs. In 1821 an attempt was made when the village of *Fredericksburg*, now Woolridge, named in honour of the Duke of York and Albany, was started along the right bank of the Begha or Beka River, a few miles to the south east of the present town of Peddie. This scheme was a failure.<sup>5</sup> In 1847 the Governor issued a notice calling for applications from settlers to settle in the Tyumie Valley. As a result of his scheme the villages of *Juanasburg*, called after the wife of

---

<sup>5</sup>Cory 2.111. Theal 1.374.

Sir Harry Smith, *Woburn* and *Auckland* and *Ely* sprang up in 1848. On Christmas morning 1850 the Xosas fell upon the first three places. The inhabitants of Woburn were murdered and the village set alight, the male occupants of Auckland were murdered and Juanasburg was destroyed.

The town of *Seymour*, the seat of the Magistracy of Stockenstrom, owes its name to Lt. Colonel Charles Seymour, Military Secretary to Sir George Cathcart. It had been known previously as *Elands Post*, situated on the Kat River. The old military buildings are now used as a Residency of the Magistrate. The word Post appears in several place names and although the places were not originally military fortifications they were used as military police camps. For example, Elands Post, above named, *Post Retief* called after the great Voortrekker Piet Retief in 1837 and put up so that farmers in the Winterberg district could be more easily protected than from such places as Fort Beaufort and Fort Armstrong;<sup>6</sup> *Post Victoria*, on the watershed between the Keiskamma and Fish Rivers, was an earthenwork fort enclosing military huts.

*Cuylerville*<sup>7</sup> and *Trappes Vallei* (marked *Traps Vallei* on the map of 1895) derive their names from military men, namely, Captain (afterwards General) Jacob Cuyler, who became Landdrost of Uitenhage in January 1806, and Captain Charles Trappes, who, in 1819, was second in command at Grahams-town and in the following year became provisional Landdrost of Bathurst. In the district of Worcester there is a *Trappes Kraal*. Captain Trappes was appointed Civil Commissioner of Worcester in 1828. *Warrenton*, near Kimberley, is a town which the older generation would remember having come into existence. It was named after Major-General Sir Charles Warren, who had been connected with military operations in Bechuanaland more than forty years ago.

<sup>6</sup>Cory, 3.190.

<sup>7</sup>Mentioned in 1822. Records XV.53.

The Royal Navy of Great Britain has given us some place names which we would expect to find along the coast. In 1822 H.M. Ships *Barracouta* and *Leven* explored the shores of Africa, Arabia and Madagáscar.<sup>8</sup> The names of these two ships are commemorated in the south coast in *Cape Barracouta*, the *Cabo Do Salto* of the Portuguese, and in *Leven Point*. *Mudge Point* was called after Lieut. Mudge, who was a member of Owen's Survey. Capt. Owen, the narrator of this voyage tells us after whom *Walker Bay* is called. He says, "To the eastward of Cape Hangclip is also a large bay, which has escaped the notice of navigators until recently discovered by Mr. Walker, a Master in the Navy . . ."<sup>9</sup> Not far from the mouth of the Coega River in Algoa Bay is *Jahleel Island* which perpetuates the name of Sir Jahleel Brenton, Bart., a man of high character who was at the Cape in 1816 as His Majesty's Naval Commissioner. In 1820 Captain Fairfax Moresby, R.N. drew up a report on the rivers and coast between Cape Recife and the mouth of the Keiskama and records a few place names. The Sunday River runs into the sea close to a remarkable rock which he called *Reads Monument* in remembrance of a fine youth, a midshipman of his own ship the *Menai*, who perished with three seamen, in the execution of his duty whilst surveying the coast. When in Algoa Bay he named a rocky island south west of St. Croix, *Brenton's Isle*, after Sir Jahleel Brenton.<sup>10</sup> *Pringle Bay*, near Cape Hangclip, probably was called after Rear-Admiral Thomas Pringle, in command of the Naval Station here in 1796 and was succeeded in 1798 by Sir Hugh Cloberry Christian.

---

<sup>8</sup>"Narrative of voyages to explore the shores of Africa, Arabia and Madagáscar" by Capt. W. F. W. Owen, R.N. London, 1833.

<sup>9</sup>*Ibid* Vol. 1.63.

<sup>10</sup>Records XIII.189.

In 1856 a number of settlers, members of the German Legion, came out and were located in part of what was formerly British Kaffraria. This corps of men had been raised for service in the Crimea, but were not required when peace with Russia had been signed. They were promised to be disbanded at the Cape if they would come out as military settlers. They disembarked at East London and were distributed in various villages in British Kaffraria. Names of German origin are found in that part of the Cape Colony in which they settled. In the district of King Williams Town there are *Breidbach*, *Charlottenburg*, *Hanover*, *Marienthal*, *Wiesbaden*, *Frankfort*, *Hamburg*, *Bodiem* and *Braunschweig*. In the East London district there are *Berlin* and *Potsdam*, while *Stutterheim* derives its name from Baron Von Stutterheim, the Commander of the German Legion.

**PART IV.**

**MISCELLANEOUS.**

## I.

## NAMES CONNECTED WITH THE CHURCH AND MISSIONS.

The nomenclature of South Africa has been enriched by a number of names which refer to the activities of the church and the missionary. In a country such as South Africa with a large native population which were heathens it would be expected that missionary societies would send out their men to labour amongst them and spread the gospel. From the 18th century onwards such work has been carried on amongst the Hottentots and Bantu races. The Moravians, the London Missionary Society, the Glasgow Missionary Society, the Rhenish and the Berlin Missionary Societies, the Wesleyans and other religious bodies have had their representatives working in one or another place. Scattered over various parts of South Africa there still exist mission stations, some of which have a history of more than a century old. Several of these place names represent the name of the original founder or that of some notable worker of the various Missionary Societies, while many are names taken from the bible.

It is not proposed to give here a successive history of the mission work, but simply to mention some of the more important places which are found on the map. Places outside the Cape Colony are not mentioned here. For a very clear and succinct account of the history I would refer the reader to "A History of Christian Missions in South Africa." The early missionary

---

<sup>1</sup>By Rev. J. du Plessis, Litt.D., B.D., Longmans, Green & Co., 1911.

activities and the stations established deserve, however, something more than just the mere mention of the place names, and when these were established.

The honour of beginning mission work in South Africa must be given to the Moravian Brethren, who sent out Reverend George Schmidt in 1737. He commenced his evangelistic work amongst the Hottentots at *Baviaans Kloof*, in the present district of Caledon. He met with opposition from the Dutch church and returned to Europe in 1744. This ended the first efforts in mission work, but after repeated requests to be allowed to send missionaries out the Moravians were granted their petition in 1791. In the following year three of their brethren came out. They selected *Baviaans Kloof* as the field of their operations and soon laid the foundation work by their society. When Commissioner J. A. de Mist visited this station in 1803 he found nearly eleven hundred people attached to the mission and occupying about two hundred wattle and daub cottages. de Mist expressed himself well pleased with what he saw. At the request of Governor J. W. Janssens the name of *Baviaans Kloof*, Dutch *Baviaan* a baboon, so called on account of the number of baboons which frequented the vicinity, was changed into *Genadendal* — *Gnadenthal* in German, from the Dutch *Genade*, grace, and *Dal*, a vale. This name was approved of by the governor in 1806. Mr. R. Schmidt, one of the present missionaries, has kindly given me the following information about the change of this place name. In 1805 one of the missionaries was dining with the Governor in Cape Town and Janssens remarked that the Brethren had such beautiful names for their other stations and expressed a wish that the name *Baviaans Kloof* should be altered as every farmer called his child a "baviaantje" (a little baboon). He suggested one of the following names: "Neu Gnadenthal," "Neu Gnadenane" or "Zinzendorf." So successful had the work of the Moravians become that the Earl of Caledon, the Cape Governor, encouraged them to form an-

other station. In the *Groenekloof*, in the present district of Malmesbury, was a reserve called *Louwskloof*, adjoining the Government farm *Kleine Post*. He offered them the two places together with a piece of land named *Cruywagen's Kraal*. They accepted this and established a new station in 1808 which they called *Mamre*.<sup>2</sup> The third missionary station was established in the Eastern Province in 1816 on the Sundays River in the district of Uitenhage and called *Enon*. In 1818 the station at *Shiloh*<sup>3</sup> was opened and in 1824 *Elim*,<sup>4</sup> forty miles south-east of Genadendal was commenced.

In 1799 the London Missionary Society began its labours at the Cape, but the attempt to form a mission station near the Kraal of the Xoxa Chief Gaika proved unsuccessful. In 1803 one of the society's missionaries, Dr. J. T. v. d. Kemp, requested that the mission station established along the Little Zwartkops River might be called *Betheldorp*<sup>5</sup> which request was sanctioned in 1803. A station at *Zuurbraak*, in the Swellendam district, was opened in 1812. This area had been occupied by the remnant of the Attaqua tribe. The following year at *Hoogekraal*, in the George district, where the remnant of the Outinequa tribe lived, a missionary, the Rev. Charles Pacalt, went to reside. After his death in 1818 the place was called *Pacaltsdorp*. *Griquatown* received its name from the Reverend John Campbell and referred to the Griquas. The name of these people had been given to them by the same gentleman. They consisted chiefly of Hottentots or of mixed Hottentot and slave descent, but some had European blood. Griquatown had previously been the mission station *Klaarwater*, the native name of this was 'Gatee t'Kamma. *Hankey*, in the present *Humansdorp* district,

<sup>2</sup>*Mamre, i.e.*, the place where Abraham dwelt. Gen. 13.18.

<sup>3</sup>Meaning place of rest. See Gen. 49.10.

<sup>4</sup>Name taken from the Israelites' Camp at Elim. Ex. 15.27.

<sup>5</sup>Bethel, house of God; the Canaanite city of Luz but called by Jacob Bethel. Gen. 28.19.

was a mission station founded in 1825 and called after Akers Hankey, Secretary of the London Missionary Society. *Knappshope*, in King Williams Town district was also established. In the Stockenstrom district there are *Philipton* and *Readsdale* which commemorate two of the well known missionaries of the London Society, Reverends Dr. John Philip and Read, and *Lushington*, called after the head of the society. In the same district is *Buxton*, which recalls the name of the noted philanthropist, Sir Thomas Fowell Buxton, who supported the Reverend John Philip's views regarding the coloured people in South Africa.

To the activities of the Wesleyans many place names are due. The Wesleyan Society commenced its mission work in 1816 when the Reverend Barnabas Shaw arrived in South Africa and shortly after founded a station at the *Kamiesberg*,<sup>6</sup> in Little Namaqualand, and called *Leliefontein* (Lily Fountain). There was another Revd. Shaw — William Shaw — who had come out in 1820 with the British Settlers and had expressed a desire to undertake work amongst the Kaffirs. In 1823 he founded *Wesleyville* Mission Station in the present Peddie district, which was named after the great John Wesley. Shaw planned a chain of stations which was to stretch from Salem to the Port of Natal, a distance of four hundred miles. From *Salem*,<sup>7</sup> a village founded by the 1820 Settlers, where he had conducted services regularly, he wrote that, "There is not a single missionary between my residence and the northern extremity of the Red Sea." Thus his visions of a field of missionary activity in the regions beyond. *Wesleyville* was the first of this chain.

---

<sup>6</sup>Revd. C. Pettman says that some derive the word *Kamiesberg* from the Hottentot *Chami*, a lion, but that this is wrong. It is derived from a word meaning "to gather." "Wesleyan Place Names" in *The Methodist Churchman*, 1922.

<sup>7</sup>The Hebrew meaning peace.

Then followed *Mount Coke*, in the present King Williams Town district, established in 1825 and named by the Rev. Shaw after the Rev. Dr. Coke, who is justly regarded as the forerunner and founder of the Methodist Mission.<sup>8</sup> On the tributary of the great Kei was founded *Butterworth* in 1827, the third station in the chain. It was established by the reverend W. J. Shrewsbury, who named it after Joseph Butterworth, M.P., for some years the honoured Treasurer of the Wesleyan Missionary Society.<sup>9</sup> The name is also borne by the township. The next three stations founded in connection with this scheme were *Morley*, in the present district of Mquanduli, founded in 1829, *Clarkebury* in Engcobo, 1830, and *Buntingville* in the same year. The Reverend William Shaw's wife Ann, had been commemorated in the place *Annshaw*, near Middle Drift, King Williams Town. *Kamastone*, in the Queenstown district, "enshrines the name of the christian Chief Kama, to which is appended the last syllable of the name of the missionary (Shep) stone, who gave himself so devotedly to the pastoral care, for so many years, of the people of the station."<sup>10</sup>

In 1821 the first representative of the Glasgow Missionary Society, founded in 1796, arrived in South Africa. In 1824 this Society laid the foundation of the mission station at *Lovedale*, an institution from the very first indented with special educational effort on behalf of the natives.<sup>11</sup> It was named in honour of the Reverend Dr. John Love, the moving spirit and secretary of the Glasgow Society. Then followed the establishment of stations at *Balfour* in 1828, *Burnshill* and *Pirie* in 1830. *Balfour*, on the Kat River, was called so in honour of the first Secretary of the Glasgow Society and *Burnshill* on the Keiskamma River was named after the Reverend John Burns, one of the

---

<sup>8</sup>Pettman "South African Methodist Place Names."

<sup>9</sup>*Ibid.*

<sup>10</sup>*Ibid.*

<sup>11</sup>du Plessis, "Christian Missions."

founders of the same society, while Pirie also honoured a founder, the Reverend Alexander Pirie.

The Berlin Missionary Society commenced its work here in 1834 and amongst the place names which are connected with its activities are *Bethel*, founded in 1837, and *Wartburg*, founded in 1855, both in the Stutterheim district and *Petersburg* established in 1856 in the King Williams Town district. The station *Zoar*,<sup>12</sup> in the district of Ladismith, was founded in 1817 by the South African Missionary Society, but at different times came under the control of the Berlin Society and the Dutch Reformed Church. About seventy years ago the Church of England established four stations which were named after the evangelists, *St. Lukes*, in the district of King Williams Town, *St. Matthew's* at Keiskamma Hoek, *St. Marks*, and *St. Johns* in the native territories. The Rhenish Society has also carried on work in some of the older towns as Stellenbosch and Worcester, but have mission stations as well. For example, there is *Wupperthal* in the Clanwilliam district.

Several place names were given in honour of ministers of the Dutch Reformed Church. By an ordinance passed in the early days of the Dutch East India Company the Dutch Reformed Church was the only religious denomination allowed to exercise its teachings. The Lutherans were allowed to establish a church in Cape Town in 1780. This was only after they had persistently sent in petition after petition to the authorities for nearly half a century. de Mist in 1804 permitted religious equality to persons of all creeds in the Cape Colony.<sup>13</sup> But to prevent immoral or dangerous teaching the establishment of a congregation could only take place with the consent of the governor. The Dutch Reformed Church had been always looked upon as the State Church. During the 17th and 18th centuries its clergymen were

---

<sup>12</sup>Hebrew meaning Smallness — a town east of the Dead Sea.

<sup>13</sup>Ordinance 25th July 1804.

the servants of and paid by the Dutch East India Company. After 1806 while the clergymen were paid and appointed by the Government, there was no state church. Up to 1843 the practice had been to submit for appointment a nomination of names of elders and deacons to the Government. On the 12th December 1843 the Secretary to Government wrote to the minister at Beaufort West that His Excellency saw "no occasion for submitting the names of any consistories for his approval, and much less the names of consistories in congregations not supported by Government."<sup>14</sup> This made the church free of control in the appointment of their Elders and Deacons. By Act No. 5 of 1875, state aid of the churches in the Colony was abolished.

In 1820 the Government made arrangements to engage Scotch clergyman for the Dutch Reformed Church as ministers could not be obtained in Holland. Amongst those who came out were the Reverends Andrew Murray who arrived in 1822, Henry Sutherland, 1824, Colin Fraser in the same year. The memory of these gentlemen has been perpetuated respectively in the districts of *Murraysburg*, the Magisterial district being created in 1859, *Sutherland* named in 1857, and *Fraserburg*, named in 1851. *Pearston* is called after Reverend John Pears who came out in 1829 and *Robertson* named in 1863, recalls a well known figure of the Dutch Church, the Reverend Dr. William Robertson. *McGregor*, formerly *Lady Grey*, and *Steytlerville*, were named after the late Reverends Andrew McGregor and Abraham Isaac Steytler. *Mboreesburg* in the district of Malmesbury honours the late Reverend J. C. le F. Moorrees, for many years minister of the Malmesbury congregation. *Calvinia* was so named in 1851 after the great Reformer John Calvin at the request of the Dutch Reformed Church at the Hantam which became *Calvinia*.<sup>15</sup> In 1856 the boundaries of the district were

---

<sup>14</sup>Letter Book No. 1591, Colonial Office Archives.

<sup>15</sup>Letter 6.10.1851. Rev. Hofmeyr to Government.

proclaimed as it was intended to establish a magistracy at *Alexandria* formerly Oliphants Hoek.<sup>16</sup> This place was called after Revd. Alexander Smith, who arrived in South Africa in 1823 and was for very many years minister of the Dutch church at Uitenhage. *Albertinia*, on the site of Tygerfontein, is called after the Revd. Mr. Albertyn. The congregation of *Herold*, in the district of George was formed about twenty years ago and no doubt the surrounding area where the church and farms stand will in course of time become a village. The name commemorates the late Revd. Tobias Herold at one time Dutch Reformed minister of George congregation.

---

<sup>16</sup>G. N. 5.6.1850.

## II.

## VARIA.

The Commissioners of Enquiry sent out to the Cape by the British Government in 1823 recommended that the Cape Colony should be divided into two provinces of nearly equal size. It was proposed that the eastern province should have a government of its own according to the precedent afforded in the case of the division of the Province of Quebec, Canada. Major-General Richard Bourke was nominated as Lieutenant-Governor of the new province.<sup>1</sup> He was to communicate with the Secretary of State, and the Governor of the Cape was to remain Commander-in-Chief of the military forces and was only to take charge of the civil administrator in the *Western Province*. On an emergency he could proceed to the *Eastern Province* and while he remained there would supersede the Lieutenant-Governor. On account of this scheme being too expensive for the means of the Colony it was abandoned.<sup>2</sup> Bourke in anticipation of taking up his office in the Eastern Province suggested that the seat of Government might be situated at or near Uitenhage as being the most central and convenient.<sup>3</sup> In fact this had been proposed by the Commissioners of Enquiry, but they thought that the new Lieutenant-Governor might, after he had made a survey of the new province, choose Grahamstown. They thought that the proximity of the latter to the frontier of Kaffir land, the usual scene of warfare, and the advantages it possessed as a military

---

<sup>1</sup>Despatch Bathurst to Somerset 20.8.1825, Records XXII. 495.

<sup>2</sup>Despatch 14.6.1827 Goderich to Bourke, Records XXXII.5.

<sup>3</sup>Letter Bourke to R. W. Hay, 27.9.1827. Records XXIII.167.

position, might give it preference over Uitenhage.<sup>4</sup> However, Lord Charles Somerset, the Governor, left the Colony early in 1826 and there was a change of Secretary of State. But the resolution was not entirely abandoned and when reviewed took another aspect as far as the administration of the province was concerned. In a despatch of the 14th June 1827 from the Secretary of State, General Bourke, who was acting Governor, was informed that, "It is the desire of His Majesty's Government that the Colony should consist of two Divisions, the first the Western Division to comprise the Districts of the Cape, Stellenbosch, Swellendam (including Caledon), Worcester (including Tulbagh, Clanwilliam and the Nieuwveld), and the Eastern Division to comprise the Districts of Graaff-Reinet (including Beaufort and Winterveld), Somerset and Albany, Uitenhage and George; and all those districts which are included in or annexed to the Principal Districts shall be called Sub-Districts." Thus arose the creation of the two areas known as the *Western Province* and the *Eastern Province*. A Commissioner-General, in the person of Captain Andries Stockenstrom,<sup>5</sup> with official residence at Uitenhage, was appointed. The instructions to Bourke were that the Commissioner-General was to reside at Grahamstown and he was entrusted with the superintendence of the proceedings of the inferior officers in which the delay of a reference to Cape Town was prejudicial to the public interests and with the duty of exercising a special superintendence over the affairs of the frontier.<sup>6</sup>

The name of *Ceres* refers to the Goddess of Agriculture and was given by the father of Senator G. G. Munnik who, about

<sup>4</sup>Records XXVII.361.

<sup>5</sup>Sir Richard Plasket, Secretary to Government wrote on 22.11.1827 to R. W. Hay, "Captain Stockenstrom has been appointed Commissioner General for the Eastern District, which has given universal satisfaction."

<sup>6</sup>Records XXXII.6 and 9.

1854, had bought the farm on the site of which the town is situated and on account of the fertility of the soil of the locality. Mr. Munnik had previously lived in Worcester but for health reasons moved to this part of the Bokkeveld.<sup>7</sup> *Mosterts Hoek*, now better known as *Michells Pass*, was no doubt called after a farmer of that family name and is mentioned in the Journal of van Plettenberg. *Constable*, a railway station along the main line in the district of Worcester, is the anglicised form of the Dutch *Konstabel*, a gunner on board of man-of-war or as applied to the English meaning a policeman. Barrow tells us that "*Constaaple*" was so named after a bastard Hottentot who had been tempted by a small spring of water to erect a hut and plant a few trees. The drought, however, had soon obliged him to quit this retreat."<sup>8</sup> *Thomas River*, which flows into the Zwart Kei in the Cathcart district, was called after an English deserter Thomas Bentley, who had been wounded by a Bushman.<sup>9</sup> *Thomas River Station* takes its name from the river.

*Kogel Bay*, Dutch *Kogel*, bullet, is marked on Colonel Robert Gordon's map of 1780 where it is also named *Colebrooke Bay*, but the first named has survived. The *Colebrooke* was an East Indiaman that went ashore there in 1778. *Gordons Bay*, commemorates Colonel Gordon, Commandant of the Dutch troops at the Cape. It evidently went by the name of *Vis Hoek* or *Fish Hoek*, a name found on maps of recent years. It is also marked thus on Gordon's map of 1780. On the latter, *Gordon's Bay* appears to be more to the south at apparently what is now *Pringle Bay*. If we read Paterson's *Travels* and look at this map it becomes slightly confusing as to which bays he refers to are actually meant. He writes, "About noon we came to the mouth of the *Stienbrassam River*, which takes its name from the species of

---

<sup>7</sup>Gathered from a personal conversation with the Senator.

<sup>8</sup>Barrow 1.38.

<sup>9</sup>Journal of Col: Collins in 1809. Records VII.58.

fish, called Stienbrassam. In the morning we came to a deep bay, not laid down in any of our sea-charts. It opens to the north and west, and is well sheltered from the south east winds by very lofty mountains. At this time (1778) Captain Gordon called it van Plettenbey's (Plettenberg) Bay; but since that he has given it another name; and for some time after, he discovered a bay to the eastward, which is laid down in all the new charts, and is said to be very safe for shipping. Finding a small stream of excellent water at this place, we agreed to stay all night; and next morning we continued our journey round the Hang Lip, or Cape False. From Hottentots Holland, to this place, the country is quite uninhabited; the whole tract consisting of precipices and rugged mountains. We passed a second bay, which was smaller than the first; though the entrance is clear of rocks, and a fine white sand; this was called Gordon's Bay. About a mile and a half from this we came to a third, which in Captain Gordon's map, is called Paterson's Bay; this is much larger than the second, but smaller than the first. The latter is directly under the Hang Lip; and between it and Gordon's Bay are lakes of fresh water, and plenty of wood. All these bays open to the north-west, and strike south inland." Now on Gordon's map Kogel Bay is marked as to-day, to the south of this he has noted Paterson's Baaytje and just before Hangklip that of Gordon's Bay.<sup>10</sup> The latter is apparently where Pringle Bay is to-day.

The *Orange River* received its name on the 17th August 1779 from Colonel Gordon in honour of the Stadtholder, the Prince of Orange. He was travelling in company of the botanist William Paterson who records the event. "In the evening," he writes, "we launched Colonel Gordon's boat, and hoisted Dutch colours. Colonel Gordon proposed first to drink the State's health, and then that of the Prince of Orange, and the Company; after which he gave the river the name of the Orange

---

<sup>10</sup>Letter 11.9.1796 from Landdrost, so called Gordon's Bay.

River, in honour of that Prince." This river had been called indiscriminately the *Vigiti Magna* by early geographers, the *Eyn*<sup>11</sup> and the *Gariëp* by the natives and later the *Groot* or *Great River* by the earlier colonists but has been known as at present since 1779. The first European who is said to have crossed it was a colonist of *Picquetberg*, *Jacobus Coetzee*. In 1761 he received permission to hunt large game to the north and with a wagon and some *Hottentots* trekked across the river and travelled some distance beyond.

*Trompetter's Drift* on the *Fish River*, named after *Hans Trompetter*, a *Hottentot* leader,<sup>12</sup> is mentioned in 1793 and here a small military fort was erected during one of the early *Kaffir Wars* in the next century. The name of the *Kowie River* appears in 1793 as 't *Kouwie* and I am informed by *Sir Walter Stanford*, late *Chief Magistrate* in the *Native Territories*, that it is derived from a *Kaffir* word *Qohi* meaning a pipe. Along the banks grew trees from which the natives made their pipes.

A *Government Notice* dated 15th August 1844 in the *Gazette* informed the public that at the request of the inhabitants of the *Kat River Settlement* or district the *Governor* had been pleased to approve of that district being thereafter called *Stockenstrom*. This honoured *Sir Andries Stockenstrom, Bart.* The same notice said that the inhabitants of *Tambookie Vley* had desired that the village there be named *Hertzog*, which was acceded to. This was called after *Mr. W. F. Hertzog*, the *Assistant Surveyor-General*. *Fairbairn*, in the *Stockenstrom* district, was named after the well known *John Fairbairn*.

The anti-convict agitation of 1849 is recalled by the name of *Captain Robert Stanford* (afterwards *Sir Robert*) who assisted the *Government* of the *Colony*. Amongst other farms which he owned was one in the *Caledon* district named *Klein River*. To this his own name of *Stanford* was later on given. *Stanford*

---

<sup>11</sup>See van der Stel's journey to *Namaqualand* in 1685.

<sup>12</sup>*Cory*, 1.91.

*Cove* takes its origin from the same source. It was intended to lay out a village on one of his other farms *Gustrouw* (q.v.) and call it *Ballana Stanford*. *Hawston* to the west of *Onrust River* commemorates a Mr. Haw at one time Civil Commissioner of *Caledon*.

Of the names of men of science connected with South Africa we have *Herschel* called after the eminent astronomer Sir John Herschel who arrived in 1834 and left in 1838. He took a keen interest in matters relating to education. The name of another noted astronomer Sir Thomas Maclear has been given to *Cape Maclear* near *Cape Point*.

The name of *Whittlesea* was given by Sir Harry Smith in honour of his native place.<sup>13</sup> In 1847 when Sir Harry, as Governor he divided British *Kafraria* into shires and gave them names as *Northumberland*, *York*, *Middlesex*, *Lincoln*, *Sussex*, *Cambridge* and *Bedford*. The name of *Cambridge*, near *East London*, still exists. On the west bank of the *Buffalo River* to the north of *Fort Glamorgan* he established the place called *London*, which afterwards became part of the present *East London*.

At the request of several inhabitants to the Government the name of *Baviaan's River* in the *Somerset East* district was changed in 1829<sup>14</sup>, to *Glen Lyden*.

To the south of *Danger Point* is a small island called *Dyer Island*. According to a letter written in 1824, to the Colonial Office this was called after an American negro *Sampson Dyer* who came to the Cape in 1806. The writer says *Dyer* was the first to venture to this island and speaks of *Dyers Islands*, including no doubt the other small island marked as *Geyser Island*.<sup>15</sup> The informant noted that these islands had not been laid down

<sup>13</sup>"Autobiography of Sir Harry Smith." 2.232.

<sup>14</sup>Government Notice 21.5.1829.

<sup>15</sup>Colonial Office Archives Vol. 387.

in any chart. *Amsterdam Flats*, near Port Elizabeth recalls the name of a Dutch man-of-war, the Amsterdam which arrived in Algoa Bay in 1817 in a disabled condition. The only chance of saving the lives on board the captain beached her. A few days after she broke up. Beyond Sea Point is a small inlet *Botany Bay* (called by some Bantry Bay). In 1804 Dr. F. L. Liesching and Mr. Jean Jacques de Ziegler obtained a piece of land not far from the "Society's House"<sup>16</sup> (site of Queens Hotel)\* in order to establish a botanical garden there. Traces of the terraces laid out are still to be seen on the slope between the Victoria and Kloof Roads. The bay derived its name from this botanical garden. In 1839 we read of "The property now belonging to Mr. Frederick Liesching (called Botany Bay)."<sup>17</sup>

In Algoa Bay is a small island called *Bird Island* and just off it a *Doddington Rock*. These recall the East Indiaman, the *Doddington* which was wrecked on the rock in 1755, and the fact that for some time the survivors remained on the island and found plenty of sea birds' eggs to subsist on. They accordingly gave it the name of Bird Island. In 1861 the public were notified that the Governor had approved "of the intended village at the 12th mile stone, on the Maitland Road; and adjoining the railway station here, being named *Bellville*." This commemorated Mr. Charles Bell, Surveyor-General from 1848-1872. The railway junction was formerly known as *Durban Road*.

---

\*See Requesten, Cape Archives.

<sup>17</sup>Ordinance 3 of 1839.

## APPENDIX I.

Place names which appear in several of the early journals, some of which are not identified. The names are given as they are spelt and will indicate the variety of forms of spelling.

Journal<sup>1</sup> of Sergeant Jan Lourens Visser on a bartering expedition to the Hessequas in 1676.

Cnoflocks Corael.

Swarte Revier.

Rivier Sonder Endt.

Calbas Crale.

Tygerhoeck.

Hosiquas Kloove.

Brede revier.

Klippige revier.

Qualbergs casteel.

Buffelsjaght.

Oliphants revier.

Buffelsjagt.

Backleyplaats.

Drooge coraal by de Kleyne  
revier.

Hosiquas cloove.

Copere craal.

Calbas craal.

Hoogewagen Craal.

Eselsjagt by de revier Sondér  
Ende.

Botterrevier.

Caffer kuil revier.

Hottentots Holland.

---

<sup>1</sup>Verbatim Copy.

## APPENDIX II.

Journal of the Ensign Isaac Schryver to the Inqua Hottentots in 1689.<sup>2</sup> Those marked with a † were names given by the Dutch travellers, and those with an \* the names applied to the place by the natives.

Hottentots Holland.	Steekdoorns revier.
Palmit Revier.	Capteins revier.
Knoflooks Coral.	*Kamnasij Revier.
Houthoek.	Valley called by Hottentots
Botte Revier.	Xanga:
Swarte Revier.	Rivier Kamna.
Calabas Coral.	*Humtata
Revier Sonder Endt.	*Thuata by Hottentots, <i>i.e.</i> ,
Tygerhoek.	Oliphants revier.
Aloe-berg.	*Naukoti or Roodsand.
Hessequaskloov.	*Quanti, <i>i.e.</i> , Dagkloov.
Ganse-Coral.	*Naudau, <i>i.e.</i> , Wittekloov.
Brede revier.	*Kxaki, <i>i.e.</i> , Sout Water
Klip revier.	(Soute revier).
†Klipveld.	*Kaliy revier.
Backeley revier.	*Udigauga.
Qualbergs Casteel.	Kalniga revier.
•Buffelsjagt.	†Vervallen Casteel.
*Phaeruh by Hottentots.	Kromme Kloov.
†Drooge revier by Dutch.	*Ikunsaij, <i>i.e.</i> , Steen rivier.
Duijvenhok.	*Kaarte (rivier).
Diepe revier. • •	*Vygenkoral (aan de
†Armoeds weijde.	Kannasij).
Gauris rivier.	Dubbeltjies Coral.
†Brandveld.	*Bikamma, <i>i.e.</i> , Melkrivier.
†Kromme revier.	†Noorwegen.
†Lang <sup>e</sup> Kloov.	*Hore, <i>i.e.</i> , Tweellingsrivier.
Valleij de Goede Hoop.	*Nungor, <i>i.e.</i> , Lustig rivier.
†Schralweijde.	*Arna
*Koukou by Hottentots, <i>i.e.</i> ,	*Abna.

<sup>2</sup>See Dag Register, volume C 395 Archives.

Palmit.  
 \*Gauka rivier.  
 Diepe revier.  
 \*Anhau.  
 †Regtplaats.  
 \*Gamkana.  
 †Wolvsjagt.  
 Qualberghs Casteel.

Backeleys Plaats.  
 Backeleys Revier.  
 \*Caertse or Kaertse revier.  
 Revier Sonder End.  
 Ganse Coral.  
 Hysiquas Cloov.  
 \*Tirri (rivier).  
 Esels jagt.

### APPENDIX III.

Journal <sup>3</sup> of the Master Gardener Jan Hartogh's trip on a bartering expedition to the Hottentots 1707.

\* Gantouw or by Dutch  
 Elandspat. (Hottentots  
 Holland Kloof.)

Palmit Rivier by Hottentots  
 Koutema or Slange Rivier.

Knoflooks Craal.

Bot rivier or Gouga by Hot-  
 tentots.

Swarte Rivier or Doggha

Kamma by Hottentots.

Sergeants rivier or Geska by  
 Hottentots.

rivier sonder ent.

Hessequaas Cloof or Gaski  
 Kamka.

Drooge rivier or Os Stamma.  
 by Hottentots.

rivier sonder ent or Kanna

Kam Kanna by Hottentots

breede rivier or called Synna  
 by Hottentots.

het Swarte Land,

een droge rivier (by de  
 Hottentots gent Ouka.)

het Swarte Land,

een droge rivier (door de  
 Hottentots Oukamma gent.  
 Oukamma.

Soute Rivier or Cisiqua.

Koukema-kraal of the "Oude  
 Heers" brother.

Kars rivier.

langs de gem. rivier naar  
 boven aan het hooge ge-  
 bergte, in een vlakke by de  
 Hottentots Gronnega.

rivier Gonuka Goggo.

Steenbokken rivier or Gam  
 Dachama.

Swartebergs rivier or hacqua.

Warme Water or Dispore-  
 camma.

quamen wij aan de Swarte  
 Rivier op ons oude pat.

bot rivier.

\*Original.

## APPENDIX IV.

Journal of M. Bergh and J. Q. Rhenius, 1725.

Jan Boontjes Craal — a drift  
 over Swarterivier.  
 Swarteberg.  
 Sergeants riviertje.  
 Quartel rivier.

Ganse Craal.  
 Appels Craal.  
 Zoute rivier.  
 Quartel, Sergeants rivier.  
 Warme water.

## APPENDIX V.

Journal of expedition of Ensign A. F. Beutler in 1752 to the Great Kei.\* Those marked with a † were names given by the travellers.

The journalist begins his entry by stating that as the route between the Castle and Mossel Bay was well known he will only record briefly the places passed.

He mentions *inter alia*:—

Poespas Valleij.	Matjes rivier.
Coornlands rivier (on which Swellendam is situated).	Ganse craal, †Modder rivier, †diepe rivier.
Klip rivier.	†Quacharivier, Ceurbooms rivier.
Compagnies post de Rietvalleij.	Wolve craals rivier.
Camped at farm of Esais Engelbregt Meyer at Mossel Bay.	lange Rietvalleij's rivier.
Klijne Brakke riviere.	moordenaars revier.
Hagel craal (last farm).	Kruijs rivier.
Proceeds over Attaquas Cloof.	Klipriviertje †Groene rivier.
Bracke rivier, Paarde Kraal.	†Pannekoeksrivier, Cromme rivier.
Saffraan Kraal, Moeras rivier.	Melkhoutbosch.
Klip Banks rivier, Saffraan rivier anders Muijse Kraal hier begint het Canas land.	Essen Bosch, Zeekoeij rivier.
lange Cloofs rivier.	Gamtousch revier,
	Cabeljousch revier.
	Leeuwenboschrivier.
	Galgenbosch.
	van Stadens rivier.
	Cracha Camma.
	Swartekops riviere.

\*Theal Belangrijke Historische Dokumenten. Deel 2.

- Zondaags revier.  
 Koernoë and Hoendercraal.  
 †Springbokken fontijn.  
 Bosjesmans rivier.  
 †Gonaquas cloof.  
 Buffels bosch rivier.  
 Visch rivier.  
 Chijs Chamma.  
 rivier kromanka.  
 rivier Gromanka.  
 Kauka or Buffels rivier.  
 Meehouw or Matjes rivier  
 tributaries of the Kauka.  
 Dewana rivier.  
 Korouw — of Klaauwen  
 rivier.  
 Goeasa.  
 Caninga or Elands rivier.  
 Goenoëbe.  
 Goadar meaning Moeras  
 Goerecha or Aloes rivier.  
 Boerrechaaij en Tinsa  
 rivieren.  
 de reviere Quenoncha alias  
 Menschen ooren.  
 de riviere Y meaning as  
 much as Zand rivier.  
 Quenoncha r.  
 Keram rivier.  
 Messina rivier.  
 Anamo rivier.  
 Danka rivier, meaning  
 Quaade rivier, Pabagaas.  
 rivier.  
 Goenoëbe.  
 Qucoanimbo rivier.  
 Gonacha rivier, Nagoerij  
 rivier, Cammacha rivier.  
 Macala rivier. Saleni rivier.  
 rivieren Niacela, Kauka and  
 Kokewe.  
 Navani rivier.  
 Tewe revier, i.e., Brak  
 revier.  
 Chijs Chamma.  
 Goeanger rivier, Gosachs  
 alias Tyger rivier.  
 Godecha rivier, Katterevier.  
 revier D'Arvaga, revier  
 Telloemoe.  
 Kohakoecka or Ezels rivier  
 Conna rivier.  
 Aga rivier or Rietvelt.  
 Gomee or Baviaansrevier.  
 Kavahe or Vrolyke rivier.  
 Tarka or Vrouwenrivier.  
 Gornts rivier.  
 Cava, water as white as milk.  
 Vischrivier.  
 †Bosjesmans cloof, Bosjes-  
 mans rivier.  
 Springbocke fontijn.  
 Sondaags rivier.  
 Swartekopsrivier.  
 Cabeljauwsche rivier, Keij.  
 Keijka or Witterrivier,  
 Leeuwe rivier called by  
 Hottentots chammago.  
 Ou, chamma rivier, i.e., Vet  
 water, Soma rivier.  
 Hartenbosch at Mossel Bay.  
 Kleyne Brakkerivier.  
 Groote Brakke en Klippen  
 driften rivieren, Gouras-  
 rivier.  
 Keerom.  
 rivieren Koeakamka en  
 Gouringa.

## INDEX OF NAMES OF PERSONS AND SUBJECTS.

*Note.*—This index only includes the principal names and subjects.

- Alarm Signals: 86  
 Animals: names of which have given place names 94 *et seq.*  
 Attaquas: 31, 61.
- Bain: Andrew Geddes: 137.  
 Bantu: contact between and Europeans: 29; drive Hottentots to south: 29; see also Kaffirs.  
 Barrow: John: 69, 94  
 Beacons: erected by D. E. I. Co.: 66, 67, 69, 89.  
 Bergh: Captain Olof: 55, *fn.*, 86.  
 Beutler: Ensign August Fredrik: 65, 168.  
 Berlin Missionary Society: activities of: 154.  
 Brand: Christoffel: 84.  
 British: names commemorating statesmen: 134; occupation of Cape Colony by: 16; settlers influence naming of places: 17; Treaty signed in 1795: 82.  
 Burghers: (see Militia).  
 Bushmen: abode of: 27; enemy of Hottentots: 28; depredations caused by: first comers to South Africa: 29; language: 29; names have disappeared: 30; place names: 27; war with Hottentots: 28; weapons of defence: 29; (see also Hottentots).
- Cape Colony: see Colony.  
 Cape of Good Hope: established by Dutch: 44; occupation by British: 119.  
 Church: names derived from activities of the: 149; state aided: 155.  
 Churches: established in outlying districts: 129; (see also Dutch Reformed Church.)  
 Clarke: Sir Auldred: 84.  
 Coetzee: Jacobus: crosses Orange River: 161.  
 Colonisation by Dutch East India Company: 44.  
 Colony: administration in country districts of: 49; divisions of in 18th century: 49; expansion of: 45; explorations to north-west and south east: 54; journey of Governor van Plettenberg to frontier of: 68; roadmaking in: 135.  
 Columbus: Christopher: 21.  
 Cruse: J.: 61.
- Dias: Bartholomeu; discovers Cape: 20; doubt as to placing of second pillar by: 19.  
 Drakenstein: see van Reede.  
 Drostdy: Explanation of term: 49.

- Dutch: call at Cape: 26; explanation of terms of place names in: 39; period in Cape History; place names during rule of: 44.
- Dutch East India Company: establish a refreshment station at Cape: 26; colonisation by: 44; farming operations handed over to burghers, fleets to call at Cape: 44.
- Dutch Reformed Church: 154.
- Eastern Province: military activities in give place names: 139 *et seq.*
- English: make Table Bay port of call: 26; place names: 119; proclaim Cape English territory: 26; (see also British).
- Explanation of many place name terms: 39.
- Explorations: to north-west and south-east: 54 *et seq.*
- Explorers: journals kept by useful for study of place names: 56; prepare way for farmer: 54; reasons for sending out: 54.
- Farm names: 94.
- Farmers: Agricultural activities of Dutch East India Company handed over to Cape Colonists: 44; movements of in 18th century: 50; on Eastern Frontier suffer from Bushmen depredations: 73.
- Fauna: place names derived from: 95.
- Field Cornet: 49.
- Fish: place names derived from: 98.
- Fitzherbert: 26.
- Flora: place names derived from: 97.
- French: at Saldanha Bay: 88.
- French Refugees: 17; farm names recalling Settlement of: 112.
- da Gama: Vasco: 21.
- Game: names derived from various: 95.
- Geography: place names an aid to study of: 13.
- German Legion: arrival of, give place names: 145.
- Glasgow Missionary Society: activities of: 153.
- Gonaquas: 31.
- Gordon: Colonel Robert Jacob: 69; names the Orange River: 160.
- Gouriquas: 61.
- Governors: places named after: 119.
- Griquas: 32.
- Hartogh: Jan: footnotes to expedition of: 45, 61, 62, 64, 166.
- Heemraden: duties of: 49.
- Hessequas: 31.
- History: place names an aid to the study of: 13.
- Hottentot: language: 29; names have disappeared: 30; place names: 27; word not of native origin: 30. See also Bushmen and Attaquas, Gonaquas, Gouriquas, Griquas, Hessequas.
- Inquas, Obiquas, Outeniquas.
- Hottentots: driven south by Bantu: 29; follow Bushmen to Southern Africa; dispossess them; movements of: 27; *et seq.*
- Inquas: 62.
- Joseph, Sheik: 87.

**Kaffirs:** wars with, give place names: 139.

**Karoo:** advance by farmers across: 53.

**Landdrost:** duties of: 49.

**Land tenure:** 47.

**Loan Places:** system of granting: 48; farms given out as: 104.

**London Missionary Society:** activities of: 151.

**Lutherans:** 154.

**Maps:** early: 21.

**Meerhoff:** Pieter van: 57.

**Menzies:** Judge William: 101

**Michell:** Colonel C. C.: 127, 136.

**Migration:** of farmers in Colony: 50.

**Military:** place names relating to activities of: 139 *et seq.*

**Militia burgher:** 100.

**Missions:** names derived from activities of: 149; see also Berlin; Church of England; Glasgow Missionary Society; London Missionary Society; Moravians; Rhenish; Wesleyan.

**Mission Stations:** names of: 149.

**Mist:** Commissioner-General J. A. de: 74.

**Mole:** built by Dutch: 77.

**Montagu:** John: 135.

**Moravian Missionaries:** activities of: 150.

**Names:** factors which influenced place: 15; explanation of terms in Dutch place: 39; many Dutch names anglicised: 16.

**Native:** place names: 27; see also Bantu, Bushmen and Hottentots.

**Navy:** place names derived from names of men in Royal: 144.

**Obiquas:** 31, 58.

**"Opstal":** see Land tenure.

**Outeniquas:** 31.

**Pacheco:** Duarte: 21.

**"Padrões" or Pillars:** erected by Portuguese: 18.

**Place names:** examples of how such are sometimes given: 66, 67.

**van Plettenberg:** Governor Joachim Baron: journey to Eastern Frontier: 68.

**Portuguese:** discover sea route to India: 18; erect *padrões*: 18; followed by French, English and Dutch in voyages to India: 26; names given by the: 18.

**Quitrent:** see Land Tenure.

**Ravenstein:** E. G.: reference to authorities of: 23.

**Reede:** Hendrik Adriaan van: 87.

**Religion:** freedom of: 154.

**Rhenish Missionary Society:** 154.

**Riebeeck:** Commander Jan van: 44.

**Rivers:** in South Africa: 41, 50.

**Roadmaking:** 135; results in establishment of towns and villages: 17, 123.

**Roads:** lines follow those of explorers and farmers: 55; opening of good: 135.

**Royal family names** derived from the: 119.

**Saldanha:** Antonio da: names Table Bay after himself: 22.

**Schryver:** Isaac: 63, 165.

**Shillinge:** 26.

**Signal Stations:** to warn militia: 86.

Slaves: criminal sentence passed on them: 80; runaway: 100.  
 Sonquas: 30.  
 Statesmen: names commemorating British and Colonial: 134.  
 Stel: Governor Simon van der: 46, 58, 71.  
 Stel: Governor Willem Adriaan van der: 46, 60.  
 Stock farmers: migration of: 47. •

Tas: Adam: 15.  
 Towns: how many were established: 123.  
 Travelling: difficulties of: 127.  
 Uitenhage: see de Mist.  
 Visser: Jan Lourens: 62, 164.  
 Wesleyan Missions: Activities of: 152.  
 Wintervogel: Jan: first Dutch explorer: 56.

## INDEX OF PLACE NAMES.

Note: Names beginning with C or K, S or Z as Comsberg or Komsberg, Sout or Zout rivier must be looked for under both letters.

- Aanbeeld: 76.  
 Aasvogel Kull: 98.  
 Aberdeen District: farms given out on "loan": 112.  
 Adder Fontein: 98.  
 Addo Height: 25.  
 Adelaide: 133.  
 Adelaide: Province of Queen: 133.  
 Afdak: 110.  
 Agoada de Saldanha (Table Bay): 22.  
 Agoada de Sao Bras (Mossel Bay): 16, 21.  
 Agulhas: Cape: 24.  
 Akerendam: 109.  
 Albany: 140.  
 Albert: 133. •  
 Albertinia: 156.  
 Alexandria: 156.  
 Algoa Bay: 19.  
 Alice: 131.  
 Aliwal North: 131.  
 Aliwal South: 131.  
 Alleman: Place Names relating to: 101  
 Altona: 114.  
 Amandel Rivier: 110.  
 Amstel (Liesbeek): 79.  
 Amsterdam Flats: 163.  
 Angeliërsbos: 111.  
 Angola Bay (Plettenberg B): 70.  
 Angra da Alagoas (Plettenberg Bay): 25.  
 Angra das Voltas: 19.  
 Angra dos Ilheos (Angra Pequena): 18.  
 Angra dos Vaqueiros: 19.  
 Angra Pequena: 18.  
 Annshaw: 153.  
 Apostles: Twelve: 78.  
 Appels Kraal: 110.  
 Artois: 113.  
 Assegaai Bosch: 52, 110.  
 Attaquas Kloof: 31, 52, 111.  
 Attaquas Mountains: 31.  
 Auckland: 143.  
 Avontuur: 108, 111.  
 Baakens River: 67.  
 Baardscheedersbosch: 110.  
 Babylons Toren: 88.  
 Bahia da Roca (Algoa Bay): 19.  
 Bains Kloof: 137.  
 Bakkeley Plaats: 15, 62.  
 Bakoven (Koekenaap): 60.  
 Bakoven: 60, 105.  
 Balfour: 153.  
 Banghoek: 87.  
 Barracouta: Cape: 144.

- Bartholomeus Klip; 104.  
 Bathurst: 134.  
 Baviaan: place names relating to: 98.  
 Baviaans Bay: 90.  
 Baviaansberg: 86.  
 Baviaans Kloof: 150.  
 Baviaans River: 67.  
 Beaconsfield: 134.  
 Beaufort West: 54, 123.  
 Beeren Valley: 68.  
 Beka River: 142.  
 Bellingan: 115.  
 Bellville: 163.  
 Berg River: Groot: 56.  
 Berg River: Klein: 57.  
 Berg Sinai: 115.  
 Berg Vallei: 60.  
 Berlin: 145.  
 Bethel: 112; Mission: 154.  
 Bethelsdorp: 151.  
 Bidouw: 32.  
 Bird Island: 163.  
 Bird Islands: 19.  
 Birds: place names relating to: 98.  
 Bishop's Court: 82.  
 Bittouwsfontein: 33.  
 Blaasbalg: 76.  
 Blaauwberg: 76.  
 Blaauwberg Strand: 76.  
 Blaauwbloemetjes Kloof: 97.  
 Blaauwbloemetjes Vlei: 97.  
 Blockdrift: 132.  
 Bloemendal: 111, 114.  
 Blomfontein: 97.  
 Blueberg, see Blaauwberg.  
 Blyde River Blye Rivier: 70, 112.  
 Bodiem: 145.  
 Bokfontein: 108.  
 Bokkekraal: 86.  
 Bokkeveld: 51.  
 Bokkeveld: Cold: 43, 108.  
 Bommelshoek: 114.  
 Bonne Esperance: 109.  
 Rontebok: not universal as a place name: 96.  
 Rontebok Kuil: 96.  
 Rontjeskraal: 98.  
 Boschberg: 124.  
 Boschbergen: 40.  
 Boscheuvel: 82.  
 Bosjesmans Kloof: 36, 106.  
 Bosjesmans River: 70.  
 (see also Bushmans).  
 Bot River, also Boter Botte, Botter: 63.  
 Botany Bay: 163.  
 Bottelary: 115.  
 Bracke River: 65.  
 Brak River: 65.  
 Brakfontein: 42.  
 Brakkefontein: 107, 110.  
 Brakke River: 42, 68.  
 Brandenburg: 60.  
 Brand Vallei: 109.  
 Brand Vlei: 93.  
 Brandwacht: 109.  
 Brandwagt: 109.  
 Braunschweig: 145.  
 Bredasdorp: 130, 138; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 110.  
 Breede River: 25, 62.  
 Breidbach: 145.  
 Brentons Isle: 144.  
 Britannia Rock: 57.  
 Broodkraal: 105.  
 Bruintjes Hoogte: 70, 112.  
 Bruydegoms Hoek: 91.  
 Buffalo River: 35; see also Buffels.  
 Buffel: place names relating to the: 96.  
 Buffelsjagts River: 62.  
 Buffels River: 35, 60, 67, 68.  
 Buffels Vermaak: 70.  
 Buntingville: 153.  
 Burgers Drift: 105.  
 Burghersdorp: 131.  
 Burgogne: 113.  
 Burgundy: 113.  
 Burnshill: 153.  
 Bushmans River: 36, 70. see also Bosjesmans R.  
 Butterworth: 153.  
 Buxton: 152.  
 Ry den Wyk: 115.

- Cabeljauws (Kabeljauws)  
   River: 52, 66.  
   also Cabeljauwsch and  
   Cabeljousch.  
 Cabrière: 112.  
 Calais: 113.  
 Caledon: 120.  
 Calvinia: 155; farms given  
   out in district of: 162.  
 Cambridge: 162.  
 Camdebo (Camdeboo): 54, 68.  
 Camdebo River: 68.  
 Camp's Bay: 75.  
 Canary Fontein: 109.  
 Candouw: 68.  
 Cango: 53.  
 Cango Caves: 53.  
 Cannaland: 65.  
 Canonberg: 85.  
 Cape of Good Hope: 21.  
 Cape Peninsula: 20, 21.  
 Cape Point: 22.  
 Cape Town: 71.  
 Cardouw Pass: 32.  
 Carmenaatjes Craal: 109.  
 Carnarvon: 134.  
 Cartouw: 107.  
 Cartouw Pass: 32.  
 Cathcart: 132.  
 Cephannes Poort: 69.  
 Ceres: 158; farms given out  
   on "loan" in district of:  
   • 108.  
 Chammaga River (Leeuwen  
   River): 68.  
 Champagne: 113.  
 Champagne (Cephanjes)  
   Poorts River: 69.  
 Charlottenburg: 145.  
 Chavonnesberg: 93, 109.  
 Chobe Kleine: 108.  
 Chanwilliam: 121; farms  
   given out on "loan" in  
   district of: 115.  
 Clara Ann's Fontein: 115.  
 Clarkebury: 153.  
 Coega: 35.  
 Coega De: 109.  
 Coegakamma: 34.  
 Coerney: 67.  
 Coetzenberg: 115.  
 Cogmans Kloof: 53, 93.  
 Colebrooke Bay: 159.  
 Colesberg: 128.  
 Commadagga: 35, 70.  
 Commandants Drift: 100.  
 Company (Compagnie):  
   place names relating to the  
   D.E.: 100.  
 Comsberg: 110.  
 Concordia: 110.  
 Coney Island (Dassen  
   Island): 23.  
 Constable: 159.  
 Constable Hill: 91.  
 Constantia: 114.  
 Content Bay (Plettenberg  
   Bay): 70.  
 Coornlands River: 72.  
 Copere Kraal: 62.  
 Copper Mountain: 58.  
   (Koperberg).  
 Cornelia Island (Robben  
   Island): 77.  
 Coup (Koup): 35.  
 Cradock: 120, 124.  
 Cradock's Pass: 135.  
 Cragga Camma: 67.  
 Cross Cape: 18.  
 Cruys (Kruis) Valley: 106.  
 Cruywagens Kraal: 151.  
 Cust: 112.  
 Cuylerville: 143.  
 Dag Kloof: 63.  
 Danger Point: 24.  
 Darling: 132.  
 Dassenberg: 59.  
 Dassen Island: 22, 23.  
 Dassie: place names relating  
   to the: 98.  
 Deeze Hoek: 105.  
 Devils Peak: 78.  
 Diamandt en de Peerlberg:  
   57.  
 Diemersdal: 114.  
 Diepe Kloof: 107.  
 Diep River: 59, 66.

- Diep River Vlei: 79.  
 Dipka: 110.  
 Dniesdouw: 33.  
 Doddington Rock: 163.  
 Donkin, Bay: 126.  
 Donkin Bay Flats: 126.  
 Doodenkraal *alias* Droogekraal: 115.  
 Doorn Fontein: 105.  
 Doornbosch River: De Groot: 59.  
 Doornbosch River: De Kleine: 60.  
 Doorn River: 53.  
 Doorn River: Groot: 65.  
 Doorns, De: 93.  
 Douwkamma: 34.  
 Drakenstein: 87.  
 Driefontein: 108, 109.  
 Driekoppen (Mowbray): 80.  
 Droogekraal: 62, 115.  
 Drooge Rust Kloof: 106.  
 Drooge Rystkloof: 106.  
 Droogeveld (The Karoo): 63.  
 Drosders Nek: 101.  
 Drosters Kloof: 101.  
 Duivels Kop: 70.  
 Duivenheuvel: 86.  
 Duivenhoks River: 63.  
 Durban: 129.  
 Durban Road: 163.  
 Durbanville: 129.  
 du Toits Kloof: 104.  
 Dwyka River: 34, 68.  
 Dyer Island: 162.  
  
 East London: 142, 162.  
 Eastern Province: 157.  
 Eerste Poort: 69.  
 Eerste River: 88.  
 Ekse River (Hex R.): 53.  
 Eland: place names relating to the: 96.  
 Elands Kloof: 96.  
 Elands Dans: 111.  
 Elands Kraal: 59.  
 Elands Pad (Sir Lowrys' Pass): 33.  
 Elands Post (Seymour): 143.  
  
 Elbers Kraal: 111.  
 Elfers Kraal: 111.  
 Elim: 151.  
 Elizabeth Island: (Dassen Island): 22, 23.  
 Els: place names relating to: 98.  
 Elsenbosch: 105.  
 Elsenburg: 86.  
 Elsjes: Kraal River, Kraal, River: 79.  
 Ely: 143.  
 Enko: 110.  
 Enon: 151.  
 Eselsjagt River: 62.  
 Essenbosch: 66, 105.  
  
 Fairbairn: 161.  
 False Bay: 22, 23.  
 False Cape: 23, 56.  
 False Inlet or Kwaaikoek: 20.  
 Ferosa Bay (Plettenberg Bay): 26.  
 Fish Bay: 25.  
 Fishery Point: 25.  
 Fish River Great (see Vis and Visch): 20.  
 Flesh Bay: 25.  
 Fontein: names compounded with: 96.  
 Fontein De: 109.  
 Formosa Bay (Plettenberg Bay): 26.  
 Fort Aledaide: 133.  
 Fort Armstrong: 140.  
 Fort Beaufort: 123.  
 Fort Beresford: 140.  
 Fort Brown: 140.  
 Fort Cox: 141.  
 Fort Dacres: 142.  
 Fort Frederick: 119.  
 Fort Glamorgan: 141.  
 Fort Hare: 142.  
 Fort Montgomery Williams: 141.  
 Fort Murray: 141.  
 Fort Peddie: 141.  
 Fort Thomson: 141.

Fortuin De: 115.  
 Fort Warden: 141.  
 Fort Waterloo: 141.  
 Fort Wellington: 141.  
 Fort White: 141.  
 Fort Willshire: 140.  
 Frankfort: 145.  
 Fransche Hoek: 87.  
 Fransche Hoek Pass: 45, 126.  
 Fraserburg: 52, 155.  
 Fredericksburg: 142.  
 French Hoek (see Fransche Hoek).

Galgenbosch: 66.  
 Da Gama Peak: 21.  
 Gamka River: 34, 68.  
 Gamtoos, Gamtousch River: 96.  
 Ganna: place names relating to: 97.  
 Gantouw (Sir Lowry's Pass): 33.  
 Ganze Kraal: 65, 105.  
 Garcia Pass: 127.  
 Gaurits River (see Gourits River).  
 Geelbeksfontein: 105.  
 Geelslang Fontein: 98.  
 Geerap: 106.  
 Gemsbok: places names relating to the: 95, 96.  
 Genadendal: 150.  
 George: 132; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 111.  
 Gerecke Point: 25.  
 Gevelbergen (The Twelve Apostles): 78.  
 Geyser Island: 162.  
 Ghoup: 35.  
 Glen Lynden: 162.  
 Goede Geloof: 111.  
 Goede Hoop: 104.  
 Goedemans Kraal: 106.  
 Goede Ontmoeting: 115.  
 Goerap: 106.  
 Gomee River: 67.  
 Gonjemans Kraal: 106.

Gonubie River: 67.  
 Good Hope Cape of: 21.  
 Gordonia: 138.  
 Gordons Bay: 159.  
 Gordons Fontein: 69.  
 Goudine/Goudini: 68.  
 Gouna: 35.  
 Gouph: 35.  
 Gourits River: 25, 55, 61; various spellings of: 63.  
 Gouwkamma: 34.  
 Graaff-Reinet: 73; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 112.  
 Graauwe Heuvel: 110.  
 Grahams Town: 140.  
 Granendorp: 86.  
 Great Fish River: 20.  
 Greys Pass: 132.  
 Greys River: 121.  
 Greyton: 132.  
 Griqualand East: 32.  
 Griqualand West: 32, 134.  
 Griquatown: 151.  
 Groeneberg: 86.  
 Groene Kloof: 88.  
 Groen River: 109.  
 Groen Vallei: 105.  
 Groot Brandwacht: 111.  
 Groot Fontein: 105.  
 Groote Post: 100.  
 Groote Schuur: 79.  
 Grootvaderbosch: 92, 110.  
 Gustrouw: 104, 162.  
 Gydo Berg: 32.  
 Gydo Pass: 32.  
 Haas: place names relating to the: 98.  
 Hagas: 111.  
 Hagel Kraal: 52, 111.  
 Halve Dorsvloer: 107.  
 Hamburg: 145.  
 Hangklip Cape: 24, 56.  
 Hangklip False: 24.  
 Hankey: 151.  
 Hanover: 145.  
 Hantams Berg: 109.  
 Hardveld: 43.

- Hartebeest: place names relating to: 95, 96.  
 Hawston: 162.  
 Hazendal: 115.  
 Heeren Logement: 60.  
 Helderberg: 88.  
 Hendrik van der Wats Gat: 107.  
 Herberts Mount (Devils Peak) 78.  
 Hercules Fontein: 105.  
 Hermanus Kraal: 141.  
 Herold Congregation: 156.  
 Herschel: 162.  
 Hertzog: 161.  
 Hessequas Kloof: 31, 62.  
 Hex River: 53.  
 Hex River Mountains: 53.  
 Hoek De: 107.  
 Hoek The: 107.  
 Hoender Kraal (Coerney): 67.  
 Hoetjes Bay: 90.  
 Hollebak: 110.  
 Honigberg: 59, 105.  
 Hoogeburg: 86.  
 Hoogekraal: 115 (Cape): 151 (George).  
 Hoogekraal (Kleine): 70.  
 Hooggelegen: 86, 115.  
 Hoogenwagen Kraal: 62.  
 Hooivlakte: 54.  
 Hoop De: 109.  
 Hottentots Bush: 36.  
 Hottentots Fontein: 36.  
 Hottentots Holland: 36, 45.  
 Hottentots Holland Kloof (Sir Lowry's Pass): 32, 127.  
 Hottentots Holland Mountain: 36.  
 Hottentots Kloof: 45.  
 Hottentots Poort: 36.  
 Hottentots River: 36.  
 Hout Constant: 112.  
 Houd den Bek: 99, 112.  
 Houhoek, Houhoeck, Hout Hoek (now Houw Hoek): 64.  
 Hout den Bek: 109.  
 Hout Bay: 76.  
 Hout Bay Kloof: 78.  
 Houw Hoek: 63.  
 Houw Hoek Kleine: 86.  
 Humansdorp: farms given out on "loan" in district of: 111.  
 Ibequa River: 31.  
 Ilheo da Santa Cruz (Now St. Croix): 19.  
 Ilheos Chaos: 19.  
 Ilheos da Cruz: 19.  
 Infante (Infanta): Cape: 25.  
 Infante River: 20.  
 Islands of the Cross: 19.  
 Isselstein Bay (Simons Bay) 75.  
 Jahleel Island: 144.  
 Jan Dissels Vlei (Clanwilliam): 121.  
 Jan Harmansz Schat: 110.  
 Jan Hermansz Gat: 110.  
 Jonkers Hoek: 85.  
 Joostenburg: 86.  
 Juanasburg: 131, 142.  
 Jutten Island: 89.  
 Kabeljauws River (see Cabeljauws).  
 Kaffir Kuils River: 62.  
 Kalabas Kraal: 62.  
 Kalk Bay: 76.  
 Kalniga or Kariega River: 63.  
 Kamastone: 153.  
 Kamiesberg: 152.  
 Kammanassie: 34.  
 Kanarlberg: 59.  
 Kandelaars River: 65.  
 Kanna (see Ganna).  
 Kanonberg, Kanonkop: 85.  
 Kapokfontein.  
 Karbonaatjes Kraal: 109.  
 Kareedouw: 33.  
 Karee Melk Bosch: 97.  
 Karee River: 68.

Kariëga River: 35, 53, 68.  
 (See Kalniga River).  
 Karmelks Fontein: 105.  
 Karoo: 42, 53.  
 Kasteel Meerhoff: 57.  
 Kat River: 66.  
 Kat River Settlement: 161.  
 Kauka River: 34, 67.  
 Keerom: 99.  
 Keerweder: 99.  
 Kei River: 67.  
 Keiskamma: 20, 67.  
 Keufbooms River: 66.  
 Keurbooms River Bay: 70.  
 Khobe Kleine: 108.  
 Khobe Groote: 107.  
 Kikvorschberg: 98.  
 Kimberley: 134.  
 King Charles Mount: 26.  
 King James' Mount: 26.  
 King Williams Town: 133.  
 Kinko: 110.  
 Klaarefontein: 106.  
 Klaarstroom: 111.  
 Klaarwater: 151.  
 Klaas Voogds River: 92.  
 Klapmuts: 56.  
 Klassenbosch: 114.  
 Klein Berg River: 57.  
 Klein Oliphants Kop: 115.  
 Kleine Post: 151.  
 Kleine Vallei: 107.  
 Klein Vogel Vallei: 105.  
 Klein Roggeveld: 54.  
 Kleyne River: 62.  
 Klip Banks River: 65.  
 Klipberg: 86.  
 Klipdrift: 52, 111.  
 Klipfontein: 111.  
 Klipheuvel: 114.  
 Klippedrift: 52, 111.  
 Klippige River: 62.  
 Klip River: 65.  
 Kloof Nek: 78.  
 Knappshope: 152.  
 Knofloks Kraal: 62.  
 Knysna: 70.

Kodoo: place names relating  
 to the: 96.  
 Koeberg: 85.  
 Kogel Bay: 159.  
 Koekdouw Berg: 33.  
 Koekenaap: 60.  
 Koelenhof: 88.  
 Komsberg, De: 110.  
 Konaquas Berg: 31.  
 Koonap River: 67.  
 Koornlands Kloof: 109.  
 Kontermans Kloof: 115.  
 Koperberg: 55, 58.  
 Korhaans Drift: 98.  
 Koup De (Gouph): 35, 54.  
 Koussie River: 60.  
 Kouw Douw: 33.  
 Kowie River: 20, 161.  
 Kraai River: 120.  
 Kraankul: 98.  
 Kraane Vallei: 105.  
 Kraanvogel Kuil: 98.  
 Kragga Kamma: 34, 67.  
 Krakadouw Pass: 32.  
 Kramat: 87.  
 Krambeks River: 111.  
 Kreefte Bay: 98.  
 Krombeks River: 111.  
 Kromboom River: 79.  
 Kromme River: 53, 66.  
 Kromme River's Vallei: 106.  
 Kronendal: 114.  
 Kruis Het: 60.  
 Kruis Pad: 115.  
 Kruis River: 53, 106.  
 Kruis Vallei: 106.  
 Kulls River: 86.  
 Kulen de: 115.  
 Kuipers Kraal: 58.  
 Kwaaihoek or False Inlet: 20.  
 Kwartel Rivier: 110.  
 Kykuit alias Uitkyk: 115.  
 Kweek Vallei: 68, 133.  
 Laatste Gift: 115.  
 Laborie: 113.  
 La Bri: 113.  
 La Concorde: 112.  
 La Concordia: 112.

- La Cotte:** 112.  
**Lacus Bay:** 89.  
**Ladismith:** 131.  
**La Dauphine:** 113.  
**Lady Grey:** 132.  
**Lady Grey Bridge:** 132.  
**Lady Grey Street:** 132.  
**La Kot or La Cotte:** 112.  
**Lakeside:** 79.  
**La Motte:** 112, 113.  
**'t Land van Waveren:** 60.  
**Lange Kloof:** 25, 66.  
**Langekloof River:** 65.  
**Lange Riet Vallei River:** 66.  
**Langerug:** 125.  
**Lange Vallei:** 60, 104.  
**Languedoc:** 112.  
**La Paris:** 113.  
**La Terre de Luc:** 112.  
**L'Arc d' Orleans:** 113.  
**Laurens (Lourens) River:** 88, 104.  
**Leeuw:** place names relating to the: 96.  
**Leeuwenbosch River:** 66.  
**Leeuwen Fontein:** 108.  
**Leeuwen River:** 34, 68.  
**Leeuwen Vallei:** 105.  
**Lekkerwyn:** 113.  
**Leliefontein:** 51, 152.  
**La Provence:** 112.  
**Le Plessis; Marle:** 113.  
**Le Plaisir Marle:** 113.  
**Le Rhon:** 113.  
**Le Roque:** 112.  
**Leven Point:** 144.  
**Libertas:** 15, 114.  
**Lichtenburg:** 115.  
**Liesbeek:** 45, 79.  
**Lions Head:** 78.  
**Lions Head: Little:** 78.  
**Lions Rump:** 26.  
**Loerie River:** 111.  
**Lokenburg; Lookenburg:** 108.  
**London:** 162.  
**Long Kloof (see Langekloof.)**  
**Lourens River:** 88.  
**Lourmarins:** 113.  
**Louws Kloof:** 151.  
**Lovenstein:** 115.  
**Lucas Bay:** 89.  
**Luderitz Bay:** 18.  
**Lushington:** 152.  
**Maarsberg:** 105.  
**Maastricht:** 115.  
**Macassar Downs:** 88.  
**McGregor:** 155.  
**Maclear, Capè:** 162.  
**Maitland:** 130.  
**Malagas Island:** 78.  
**Malagassen Island:** 89.  
**Malmesbury:** 129; farms given out on "loan" in the district of: 105; see also Zwartland.  
**Mamre:** 151.  
**Marcus Island:** 89.  
**Marienthal:** 145.  
**Mascammas Berg:** 107.  
**Massenberg:** 105.  
**Matjes Rivier:** 65, 111.  
**Matskamma:** 107.  
**Matziekamma:** 107.  
**Meerhoff Kasteel:** 57.  
**Meerlust:** 115.  
**Meeuwen Island:** 90.  
**Meeuw Rock:** 98.  
**Melkhout Boom:** 98.  
**Meelkhout Essenbosch:** 110.  
**Melkhoute Kraal:** 70.  
**Melk River:** 70.  
**Menin:** 113.  
**Merriman:** 138.  
**Michells Pass:** 136.  
**Mieren Kasteel:** 58.  
**Mierhoofd Kasteel (Meerhoff Kasteel):** 58.  
**Mietjesfontein:** 107.  
**Misverstand Drift:** 59.  
**Misgund:** 107, 111.  
**Modder Fontein:** 107.  
**Moddergat:** 115.  
**Modder River:** 65.  
**Moeras River:** 65.  
**Molen De Nieuwe:** 85.  
**Molen De Oude:** 85.  
**Molen River:** 108.

Molteno: 138.  
 Monpellers: 113.  
 Montagu: 136; Bridge: 136;  
 Pass: 135.  
 Moordal: 112.  
 Moordenaar: place names re-  
 lating to a: 100.  
 Moordenaars River: 66.  
 Moorden Dal: 112.

Moorreesburg: 155.  
 Morley: 153.  
 Mossel Bay: 16, 19; farms  
 given out on "loan" in dis-  
 trict of: 111.  
 Mosselbank River: 79.  
 Mosterts Hoek: 136.  
 (Michells Pass).  
 Mouille Point: 77.  
 Mount Coke: 153.  
 Mowbray: 80.  
 Mudge Point: 144.  
 Muis Kraal: 99.  
 Muizenberg: 83.  
 Mulzenberg Vlei: 79.  
 Mulders Vlei: 87.  
 Murraysburg: 155.  
 Muyse Kraal: 65.

Namaqualand: 32.  
 Namaquasfontein: 106.  
 Nantes: 112.  
 Napier: 130.  
 Nardouw Pass: 32.  
 Naudau or Witte Kloof: 63.  
 Natal: 21.  
 Nauga: 35.  
 Nauga: De: 108.  
 Nauga: In de: 111.  
 Naukoti or Roodsand: 63.  
 Newlands: 83.  
 Nieuwveld: 54.  
 Nieuwe Molen: De: 85.  
 Noah's Ark: 78.  
 Nonna: In de: 109.  
 Non Paréille: 113.  
 Nooitgedacht: 115.  
 Noordkapper Bay: 98.  
 Noordkapper Point: 98.

Normandie: 113.  
 North Bay: 90.  
 Noud Constant: 106.  
 Nouga: 108.  
 Nounka: 70.

Obiqua Mountains: 31.  
 Olifant: place names relating  
 to the: 96.  
 Olifant Mountains: 23.  
 Olifants Pad: 45.  
 Olifant River: 23, 54, 63.  
 Oliphants Kop: 96.  
 Oliphants River: 62, 63.  
 Olyvenhout: 115.  
 Omdraai: 99.  
 Ongelegen: 111.  
 Onrust: 115.  
 Onser: 111.  
 Onwetende Fontein: 109.  
 Oorlogsfontein: 108.  
 Oortmans Post: 114.  
 Oostenwal: 91.  
 Orange Fontein.  
 Orange River: 160.  
 Orleans: 112.  
 Oud Constant: 106.  
 Oude Molen: 85  
 Oude Post: 91.  
 Oude Schip: 76.  
 Oude Westhof: Het: 115.  
 Outeniqua Mountains: 25, 31.  
 Outeniqua Range: 25.

Paardeberg: 41.  
 Paardbergen: 41.  
 Paardeberg: Kleine: 86.  
 Paarl: 57; farms given out  
 on "loan" in district of:  
 104.  
 Paarlberg: 151.  
 (see also Peerlberg).  
 Pacaltsdorp: 151.  
 Pad: Aan het: 115.  
 Padda Fontein: 98.  
 Padrone: Cape: 20.  
 Pakhuis: 107.  
 Palmiet River: 61.  
 Pampoens Kraal: 105.

- Papegaaisberg: 86.  
 Pakhuys: 107.  
 Papendorp (Woodstock): 81.  
 Paris: 112.  
 Paternoster Bay: 91.  
 Paterson Bay: 160.  
 Patientia Bay: 76.  
 Pearston: 155.  
 Peddie: 141.  
 Penguin Islands: 76.  
 Penguin Rock: 98.  
 Peerlberg: Diamandt en de:  
   57.  
 Petersburg: 154.  
 Phesante Kraal: 110, 114.  
 Philipton: 152.  
 Picardie: 113.  
 Picquetberg: 59; farms given  
   out on "loan" in district  
   of: 105.  
 Picquetbergen: 106.  
 Piekeniers Kloof: 105.  
 Pietermeintjes Fontein: 68.  
 Pieters Klip: 102.  
 Piketbergen (Piketberg): 59.  
 Piquetberg (see Picquetberg).  
 Pirie: 153.  
 Pisangs River: 70.  
 Pisangs River Bay (Pletten-  
   berg Bay): 70.  
 Platte Kloof: 115.  
 Plettenberg Bay (see various  
   names given to): 25, 70.  
 Plettenberg River: 69.  
 Plettenbergs Gat: 69.  
 Poesenjals River: 92.  
 Port Alfred: 126, 133.  
 Port Beaufort: 122.  
 Port Elizabeth: 126.  
 Porterville: 138.  
 Port Frances: 125.  
 Portugaals River: 109.  
 Portuguese Fontein: 105.  
 Portugues Konter: 23.  
 Postberg: 91.  
 Post Retief: 143.  
 Post Victoria: 143.  
 Potsdam: 145.  
 Potteberg: 110.  
 Potters Bay: 89.  
 Pramberg: 41.  
 Prince Albert: 133; farms  
   given out on "loan" in dis-  
   trict of: 111.  
 Prince Alfred Hamlet: 133.  
 Princess Vlei: 79.  
 Pringle Bay: 144.  
 Protea: 82.  
 Quacha Fontein: 109.  
 Quacha River: 66.  
 Qualbergs Casteel: 62.  
 Quagga River: 66.  
 Quanti or Dagkloof: 63.  
 Quartel (Kwartel) River:  
   110.  
 Queek (Kweek) Vallei: 68,  
   133 (Prince Albert).  
 Queens Road: 137.  
 Rawsonville: 138.  
 Readsdale: 152.  
 Reads Monument: 144.  
 Recife: Cape: 20.  
 Rhenoster Fontein: 84.  
 Rhenoster Hoek: aan de: 107.  
 Rhenoster Rug: 59.  
 Rhone: 112.  
 van Rhynsdorp: farms given  
   out on "loan" in district  
   of: 107.  
 Richmond: 130.  
 Riebeeck Kasteel: 57.  
 Riet Bay: 89.  
 Rietbok: place names relat-  
   ing to: 95.  
 Rietfontein: 86.  
 Riet Vallei: 65, 108.  
 Rietvlei: 75, 84, 92.  
 Riversdale: 137; farms given  
   out on "loan" in district  
   of: 110.  
 River Zonder End: 61.  
 Robben Island: 16, 77.  
 Robertson: 110, 155.  
 Robinsons Pass: 52, 137.  
 Rogge Bay: 77.  
 Roggeveld: 52.

- Roggeveld Kleine.  
 Roman Rock: 78.  
 Romans River: 106.  
 Rondebosch: 82.  
 Rondeboschje: Het: 115.  
 Roodebloem: 114.  
 Roode Draai: 125.  
 Roode Els: 98.  
 Roode Zand, 75, 126.  
 Roodezands Kloof: De Oude:  
     86.  
 Roodsand: 63.  
 Rosenlaal: 111.  
 Ruiter Bosch: 111.  
 Ruiters Kraal: 111.  
 Rustenberg: 115.  
 Rustenburg: 82.  
 Rustenburgh: 82.  
 Ryskloof: De: 106.  
  
 Saffraan River: 65.  
 St. Blaize: Cape: 19.  
 St. Catharine Bay (Pletten-  
     berg Bay): 70.  
 St. Croix Island: 19.  
 St. Francis Bay: 26.  
 St. Francis: Cape: 26.  
 St. Helena Bay: 21.  
 St. Johns: 154.  
 St. Lukes: 154.  
 St. Marks: 154.  
 St. Martin Paternoster: 91.  
 St. Martins Point: 91.  
 St. Matthews: 154.  
 St. Omer: 113.  
 St. Sebastians Bay: 25.  
 Sak River: 52.  
 Salamander Bay: 89.  
 Saldanha Bay: 83.  
 Salem: 152.  
 Salomons Vallei: 115.  
 Salt River: 59, 79.  
 Sand Bay: 76.  
 Sand River: 67.  
 Sapkanma: 34.  
 Sarahs River: 92.  
 Saxenberg: 115.  
 Schapen Island: 89.  
 Schonenberg: 70.  
  
 Schoonberg Bay: 93.  
 Scholtz Kloof: 111.  
 Schryvers Hoek: 91.  
 Schuil Hoek: 69.  
 Schuur: De (Groote Schuur):  
     79.  
 Seal Island: 78.  
 Sergeants River: 92.  
 Seymour: 143.  
 Shiloh: 151.  
 Signal Hill: 26, 91.  
 Simondium: 112.  
 Simons Bay: 75.  
 Simonsberg: 87.  
 Simons Town: 84.  
 Simons Valley: 87.  
 Sir Lowry's Pass: 32, 127.  
 Slang: place names relating  
     to the: 98.  
 Slange River (Palmiet  
     River): 61.  
 Slang Hoek: 109.  
 Slang Kop: 76.  
 Slang Kop Point: 76.  
 Slegtgoeg: 112.  
 Sleutel van Compagnies Dam:  
     100.  
 Slot van de Paarl: 115.  
 Smalbladeren River: 109.  
 Smitwinkel Bay: 76.  
 Sneeuwberg.  
 Sneeuwbergen: 69.  
 Soekop: 109.  
 Soektop: 109.  
 Soetmelks River: 67.  
 Somerset East: 124; farms  
     given out on "loan" in  
     district of: 112.  
 Somerset West: 124.  
 Sonquas Drift: 30.  
 Southey Pass: 137.  
 Splonkop: 41.  
 Spitskop: 41.  
 Spreeuw Fontein: 98.  
 van Stadens Dam: 120.  
 van Stadens River: 67.  
 Stanford: 161.  
 Stanford Cove: 162.  
 Steenberg: 82.

- Steenbokken River (Caledon): 166.  
 Steenbrassem River: 98.  
 Steenwerp: 113.  
 Stellenberg: 114, 115.  
 Stellenbosch: 72; farms given out on "loan" in district of 104.  
 Steytlerville: 155.  
 Stink River: 79.  
 Stockenstrom: 161.  
 Stompe Hoek: Point: 91.  
 Straat: De: 68.  
 Straatskerke: 107.  
 Strandveld: 43.  
 Struys Bay: 78.  
 Stutterheim: 145.  
 Sundays River: 67.  
 Sutherland: 52, 155; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 109.  
 Swartberg De Kleine (see also Zwartberg): 86.  
 Swarte Land (Malmesbury district): 43.  
 Swarte River: 62, 68.  
 Swellendam: 72; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 110.  
 Swellengift: 110.  
 Swellengrebel: 108.  
 Table Bay: 22.  
 Table Mountain: 22.  
 Tafelberg: 41.  
 Tamboers Kloof: 114.  
 Tamboekie Vley.  
 Tandjesberg: 41.  
 Tanquas River: 109.  
 Tarka River: 34, 67.  
 Tarkastad: 34.  
 Tausi River: 60.  
 Teekoes: 105.  
 Teelings Bay: 91.  
 Terhone: 113.  
 Tharakamma: 57.  
 Theebusberg: 41.  
 Theefontein: 105.  
 Thekoesklip: 105.  
 Theunis Kraal: 106.  
 Theunis Kuyl: 106.  
 Thomas River: 159.  
 Three Cup (Mowbray): 80.  
 Tigerberg: 58, 78.  
 Tigerhoek: 62.  
 Tiger Valley: 79.  
 Toekamma: 34.  
 du Toits Kloof: 104.  
 Tonteldoosfontein: 109.  
 Toornberg: 128.  
 Torenberg: 128.  
 Touse River: 33, 60.  
 Touws River: 33, 68.  
 Toverberg: 127.  
 Towerberg: 127.  
 Tradouw: 32, 110.  
 Tradouw Pass: 32.  
 Traka River: 34.  
 Trakamma River: 57.  
 Trappes Kraal: 143.  
 Trappes Vallei: 143.  
 Traps Vallei: 143.  
 Trekkentouw: 33.  
 Troe Troe (Van Rhynsdorp): 108.  
 Trutro: 108.  
 Trompetters Drift: 161.  
 Tstsikamma: 34, 111.  
 Tsoa or Witte River: 70.  
 Tulbagh: 74; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 106.  
 Tulbagh Basin: 60.  
 Tweede Poort: 69.  
 Tweede River (Lourens): 88.  
 Tweefonteinen: 108, 109.  
 Twee Jonge Gezellen: De: 106.  
 Tweekuilen: 105.  
 Twelve Apostles: 78.  
 Twenty Four Rivers: 59.  
 Tygerbergen: 58.  
 Tygerhoek: 62.  
 Tygersbergh: 79.  
 Tyger Valey: 79.  
 Tyumie River: 67.  
 Udiguaga: 63.  
 Uilenberg: 59.

Uit den Wyk: 115.  
 Uitenhage: 74.  
 Uitkomst: 112.  
 Uitkyk: 91, 111, 115.  
 Umtamvuna River: 28.  
 Uniondale: farms given out on "loan" in district of: 111.  
 Upington: 138.  
 Vacca: Cape: 25.  
 Vaderlandsche Rietkull: 107.  
 Vallei Klein: 107.  
 Vendutie Kraal: De: 109.  
 Vergenoegd: 112.  
 Verloren Vallei: 106.  
 Verrekyker: 106.  
 Vers Rivers (Liesbeek): 79.  
 Versailles: 112.  
 Victoria East: 133.  
 Victoria Rock: 57.  
 Victoria West: 133.  
 Vier en Twentig Rivieren: 59.  
 Vis Baai: 25.  
 Visch River: 67.  
 Vis Hoek: 76.  
 Vis Post: 91.  
 Vis River: 98.  
 Vissers Hok: 84.  
 Vis Water: 98.  
 Vleedermuis Poort: 99.  
 Vlees Baai: 25.  
 Vleesbank: 115.  
 Vogel: place names relating to a: 98.  
 Vogelfontein: 108.  
 Vogel Rivier: 70, 112.  
 Vogelstruisfontein: 105.  
 Vogelstruys Baey: 78.  
 Vogel Vallei: 107.  
 Vogel Vallei: Kleine: 105.  
 Vogelzang: 105, 115.  
 Vondeling: 105, 107.  
 Vondeling Island: 89.  
 Voor Attaquas Kloof: 110.  
 Voorbedacht: 111.  
 Voorburg: 104, 111.  
 Vredendal: 15.

Vrisch Gewaagd is half Gewonnen: 111.  
 Vyf Fontein: 109.  
 Vygekraal: 79.  
 Waal de Gat: 110.  
 Wagenbooms River: 108.  
 Wagenmakers Vlei: 88.  
 Walker Bay: 144.  
 Walvis Bay: 28.  
 Walvis: De: 77.  
 "Warme Water" (now Caledon): 120.  
 Warrenton: 143.  
 Wartburg: 154.  
 Waveren 't Land van: 60.  
 Wegloopers Heuvel: 101.  
 Welbeloond: 114.  
 Welgemeend: 114.  
 Welgemoed: 110.  
 Welgevonden: 110.  
 Welkom: 109.  
 Wellington: 135.  
 Weltevreden: 111, 112.  
 Wel van Pas: 115.  
 Wemmers Hoek: 104.  
 Wemmers Hoek Berg: 16.  
 Wesleyville: 152.  
 Western Province: 157.  
 Whale Rock.  
 Whittlesea: 162.  
 Widouw: 32.  
 Wiesbaden: 145.  
 Wildebeest: place name relating to the: 97.  
 Wilde Paard: place name relating to the: 97.  
 Williston: 138.  
 Windberg: De: 78.  
 Winkelhaak: De: 108.  
 Winterbergen: 40.  
 Winterhoek: 106, 108.  
 Witsenberg: 60.  
 Wittebergen: 40.  
 Witteboomen.  
 Witte Els: 98.  
 Witte Kloof: 63.  
 Witte River: 70.  
 Woburn: 143.

Wolf: place names relating to the: 97.

Wolve Kraal: 66, 111.

Woodstock: 81.

Worcester: 125; farms given out on "loan" in district of: 109.

Wupperthal: 154.

Wyk: By den: 115.

Wyk: Uit den: 115.

Wynberg: 82.

Zak River: 52.

Zand River.

Zandveld: 43.

Zand Vlei: 79.

Zandvliet: 87.

Zebra: place names relating to: 95.

Zeekoe: place names relating to: 97.

Zeekoegat: 97.

Zeekoe River: 66, 69, 112.

Zeekoe Vlei.

Zeekoe Vlei: De Groote: 79.

't Ziekenhuis: 110.

Zion: 115.

Zitzikamma: 34.

Zoar: 154.

Zoete Inval: 115.

Zoetendals Vlei: 92.

Zondags River: 67.

Zonnebloem: 114.

Zoo Voorby: 100.

Zout Rivier: 59, 79, 104, 110.

Zuurberg: 25.

Zuurbraak: 151.

Zuurveld: 43.

Zwartberg (Caledon):: 120.

Zwartberg: De Kleine: 86.

Zwartbergen: 68.

Zwarte Rivier: 70.

Zwarte Ruggens: 39.

Zwartkops River: 67.

Zwartland (Malmesbury district): 43, 129.

# SOCIAL LIFE IN THE CAPE COLONY in the 18th Century

BY

C. GRAHAM BOTHA

(Chief Archivist)

---

## *A few Press Notices:*

Mr. Botha has given us a most useful little book on a subject which is very much his own. . . . Any reader will find this book instructive and stimulating to further reading, and teachers particularly will find it most useful in connection with the new Matriculation Syllabus. From this point of view it will form a useful additional textbook for matriculation classes. — *The Teacher*.

Die boekie, wat mooi gedruk en uitgegee is en verskillende interessante plate bevat, is baie eenvoudig en interessant geskrywe en sal in 'n groot behoefte in ons skole voorsien. Ons hoop ons kollegas sal die boek in hulle Standerds V en VI as 'n soort leesboek invoer. Daar is vir die opkomende geslag baie leersaams in.—*Die Unie*.

A notable book . . . . a useful piece of work.—*Cape Argus*.

The book is well worth reading by those who wish to know something of the people who laid the foundations of the Union.  
—*Natal Mercury*.

Mr. Botha has written a most interesting and fascinating little book. . . . — *Daily Representative*.

---

109 Pages.

24 full page illustrations.

Bound full cloth.

Price 5/-. By Post 5/4.

---

**JUTA & CO. LTD.**

*Booksellers and Publishers*

CAPE TOWN and JOHANNESBURG

## :BOOKS BY SOUTH AFRICAN AUTHORS

<b>Aschenborn (H. Ant.).</b> The Life Story of a Gembuck. Containing 16 full-page illustrations . . . . .	3/0
Also published in Afrikaans, "Uit die Lewe van 'n Gembok."	
<b>Bancroft (F.).</b> Time and Chance . . . . .	3/6
<b>Bidwell (Maude G.).</b> Breath of the Veld. An Idylk of the Orange Free State. A Story or a Play. Illustrated . . . . .	7/6
<b>Bolus (L.).</b> A Book of South African Flowers. Illustrated with 82 coloured plates . . . . .	21/0
<b>Botha (C. Graham.)</b> (Chief Archivist). Social Life in the Cape Colony in the 18th Century. Illustrated . . . . .	5/0
Place Names in The Cape Province . . . . .	5/0
<b>Bruce (M. C.).</b> The Golden Vessel or The Training of Africa's Daughters . . . . .	3/6
<b>Collins (Jas. A.).</b> The Struggles of an Infant State. Being some glimpses into the History of the late Orange Free State Republic. Illustrated . . . . .	3/0
<b>F.C.</b> On Safari. Experiences of a Gunner in the East African Campaign . . . . .	2/6
<b>Fairbridge.</b> Piet of Italy (A Novel) . . . . .	3/6
The Torch Bearer (A Novel) . . . . .	3/6
<b>Fraser (Sir John), Kt., LL.D.</b> Episodes of My Life. . . . .	12/6
<b>Hay (Wm.) J.P.</b> Thomas Pringle. His Life and Times; with a Portrait of Pringle . . . . .	5/0
<b>Herman (J.) M.A., Ph.D.</b> The Music of South African Life, in its relation to the Culture of Europe . . . . .	5/6
<b>Hook (Major).</b> With Sword and Statue on the Cape of Good Hope Frontiers . . . . . 10/6. Reduced price	5/0
"Tis but Yesterday . . . . .	3/6
<b>Iverach (John E.).</b> Tales from the Kraal . . . . .	1/0
<b>Laurence (P. M.).</b> On Circuit in Kaffirland, and other Sketches and Studies . . . . .	7/6
<b>Lea (Allan).</b> The Native Separatist Church Movement in South Africa . . . . .	4/6
<b>McKay (J.).</b> Origin of the Xosas, and Others . . . . .	2/0
<b>Malan (F. S.), B.A., LL.D., P.C.</b> (Met 'n Inleiding deur Dr. F. V. Engelenburg.) Marie Koopmans-de-Wet. Met 23 prentjies . . . . .	5/0
<b>Nathan (Manfred), K.C., M.A., LL.D.,</b> South African Literature. A General Survey . . . . .	5/6
<b>Question of Colour, A.</b> A Study of South Africa . . . . .	6/0
<b>Robinson (Edw. F.).</b> With the da Gamas in 1497. A biographical study of the great Portuguese Navigator. Illustrated . . . . .	5/6
<b>Scully (W. C.).</b> "Daniel Vananda." The life story of a human being. Full Cloth . . . . .	4/6
<b>Scully (W. C.).</b> "Between Sun and Sand." A Tale of an African Desert. Full Cloth . . . . .	3/6
<b>Six South African Flowers and Verse.</b> A Book containing six Coloured Plates, with Verses by South African writers . . . . .	3/6
<b>Six South African Scenes and Verse.</b> Illustrated in Colour, with Verses by South African writers . . . . .	3/6
<b>Turquand (Paul).</b> "From a Pedlar's Pack." Being odds and ends of Love and Laughter . . . . .	4/0
<b>Twelve South African Flowers and Verse.</b> A Book containing 12 Coloured Plates, with Verses by South African writers . . . . .	6/0
<b>Twelve South African Scenes and Verse.</b> Illustrated in Colour, with Verses by South African writers . . . . .	6/0
<b>Waal (D.G. de).</b> With Rhodes in Mashonaland . . . . .	5/0
<b>Watkins (A. H.).</b> From Farm to Forum, or Young South Africa . . . . .	1/0
<b>Wessmann (R.).</b> The Bawenda of the Spelonken (Transvaal). A contribution towards the psychology and folklore of African peoples . . . . .	2/6
<b>Whalley (M. F.).</b> Of European Descent . . . . .	2/0
<b>Zyl (A. J. van).</b> Soeloegelendes en -Gewoontes met Plate . . . . .	2/0

**FOR FULLER PARTICULARS WRITE FOR ILLUSTRATED CATALOGUE.**

**JUTA & CO., LTD. Booksellers & Publishers, CAPE TOWN & JOHANNESBURG**